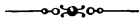


A BRIEF
LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

W. D. MOONEY, A.M.

BATTLE GROUND ACADEMY, FRANKLIN, TENN.



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

CONTENTS

	PAGE		PAGE
LETTERS, SOUNDS, ACCENT		VERBS	
The Alphabet	1	Voice	53
Roman Pronunciation	1	Conjugation	53
Classification of Consonants	2	Verb-Stems	54
Vowel Changes	3	Personal Endings	55
Consonant Changes	4	The Four Conjugations	55
Use of Capitals	6	Conjugation of Sum	56
Syllables	6	First Conjugation	60
Accent	7	Second Conjugation	60
Quantity of Vowels	7	Third Conjugation	61
Quantity of Syllables	8	Fourth Conjugation	61
INFLECTION		Deponent Verbs	70
NOUNS		The Periphrastic Conjugations	71
Gender	11	Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation	71
Number and Case	12	Peculiar Forms	72
Stem	13	Ancient and Poetical Forms	73
The Declensions	13	Formation of Stems	73
First Declension	14	List of Most Important Verbs with Stem-Forms	76
Second Declension	15	Irregular Verbs	93
Third Declension	17	Defective Verbs	98
Fourth Declension	29	Impersonal Verbs	100
Fifth Declension	30	Abundant Verbs	101
Defective Nouns	30	Inceptive Verbs	101
ADJECTIVES		PARTICLES	
Adjectives of the First and Second Declension	34	Adverbs	102
Irregular Adjectives	35	Prepositions	106
Adjectives of the Third Declension	36	Conjunctions	106
Comparison of Adjectives	39	Interjections	106
Numerals	42	FORMATION OF WORDS	
PRONOUNS		DERIVATION	
Personal Pronouns	46	Verbs	107
Possessive Pronouns	47	Nouns	108
The Reflexive Pronoun	47	Adjectives	111
Demonstrative Pronouns	48	COMPOSITION	
The Intensive Pronoun	49	Verbs	113
The Relative Pronoun	50	Nouns	114
Interrogative Pronouns	50	Adjectives	114
Indefinite Pronouns	51	SYNTAX	
Correlatives	52	Subject and Predicate	115
Pronominal Adjectives	53	Adjectives	119

	PAGE		PAGE
Apposition	119	SPECIAL USES OF NOUNS	209
Agreement of Pronouns	120	SUBSTITUTES FOR PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES	210
THE CASES		ADJECTIVES	
The Accusative	121	Adjectives as Nouns	210
The Dative	128	Equivalents for the Adjective	211
The Genitive	133	Peculiarities of the Adjective	212
The Ablative	141	Comparison of Adjectives	212
The Nominative	151	THE VERB	213
The Vocative	152	PRONOUNS	
Cases with Prepositions	152	Personal Pronouns	213
THE VERB		Possessive Pronouns	214
The Infinitive	154	The Reflexive Pronoun	214
The Participle	160	Reciprocal Pronouns	215
Gerund	164	Demonstrative Pronouns	215
Gerundive	165	Relative Pronouns	218
The Supine	167	Incorporation of the Antecedent,	218
TENSES		Indefinite Pronouns	219
Tenses of the Indicative	168	CONJUNCTIONS	
Tenses of the Subjunctive	172	Coördinating Conjunctions	221
Sequence of Tenses	172	Subordinating Conjunctions	223
Representations of the Future in the Subjunctive Mood	174	ORDER OF WORDS	223
MOODS		DEVICES TO SECURE EMPHASIS,	224
IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES		GRAMMATICAL FIGURES	
The Indicative	175	Figures of Etymology	225
The Imperative	176	Figures of Syntax	226
The Subjunctive	176	Figures of Rhetoric	227
IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES		THE ROMAN CALENDAR	228
Purpose Clauses	179	PRAENOMINA	231
Substantive Clauses of Purpose	180	VERSIFICATION	
Result Clauses	182	Principal Feet	231
Substantive Clauses of Result	183	Figures of Prosody	232
Temporal Clauses	184	Dactylic Hexameter	233
Causal Clauses	188	Scanning	233
Conditional Sentences	189	Elegiac Distich	234
Concessive Clauses	195	ROMAN MEASURES	
Relative Clauses	196	Money	234
QUESTIONS		Length	235
Direct Questions	198	Capacity	235
Indirect Questions	200	ABBREVIATIONS	235
INDIRECT DISCOURSE		CATALOGUE OF VERBS	236
Moods in Indirect Discourse	202		
Tenses in Indirect Discourse	204		
General Rules for Changing to Indirect Discourse	205		
Informal Indirect Discourse	205		
Conditions in Indirect Discourse,	207		
Subjunctive by Attraction	209		

LETTERS, SOUNDS, ACCENT

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin Alphabet differs from the English only in having no **w**.

2. **Vowels**. — The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**, and **y**. **I** and **u** have also a consonant use, but only before a vowel; consonant **i** may be written **j**, but is ordinarily not distinguished from vowel **i**; consonant **u** is usually written **v**.

3. **Diphthongs**. — The union of two vowels into one sound forms Double Vowels or Diphthongs. The ordinary diphthongs are **ae, oe, au**; the occasional, **ei, eu, ui**.

4. **Consonants**. — The remaining sounds are Consonants. The Double Consonants are **x** (= **gs** or **cs**) and **z** (= **ds**).

NOTE. — **Y** and **z** occur only in foreign words; **K** is found only in **Kaesō, Kalendae**: **KA** [= **capitālis**], **KK** [= **castrōrum**], **Kar** [= **Karthāgō**], and a few other abbreviations.

ROMAN PRONUNCIATION

5. Vowels.

ā = *a* in *father*

ē = *a* in *say* (without glide)

ī = *ee* in *seen* (without glide)

ō = *o* in *go* (without glide)

ū = *oo* in *boot* (without glide)

y = German *ü*, but inclining to *ī*

ǣ = *a* in *wash*

ě = *e* in *set*

ī = *i* in *sin*

ō = *o* in *for*

ū = *oo* in *foot*

NOTE. — Some of the sounds have no exact English equivalents, but those given above are approximately close.

6. Diphthongs.—To pronounce diphthongs, the constituent vowels should be uttered as rapidly as possible. This will give approximately:—

au = *ou* in *our* **ae** = *ai* in *aisle* **ei** = *ei* in *feint* (drawled)
eu = *eu* in *feud* **oe** = *oi* in *oil* **ui** = *we*

7. Consonants.—**C** and **g** are hard, as in *cat* and *go*; consonant **i** (**j**) = *y*; **v** = *w* in *win*; **r** is trilled; **s** is sharp, as in *hiss*; **t** is hard, as in *tin*; **x** is always hard, as in *tax*. Final **m** before a word beginning with a vowel is slurred; **n** before **c**, **g**, **q** has the sound of *ng* in *sing*; **bs** and **bt** have the sounds of **ps** and **pt**; **ch**, **ph**, **th** are sounded as **c**, **p**, **t**, followed by an aspirate: compare *inkhorn*, *loophole*, *courthouse*. The remaining letters are pronounced as in English.

Latin Words	English Sounds	Latin Words	English Sounds
cernō, crēvi	<i>kerr-no, kray-we</i>	iaciunt	<i>yah-ki-oont</i>
cīvitātēs	<i>kee-wi-tah-tace</i>	Iovis	<i>Yo-wis</i>
exercitui	<i>eks-err-ki-too-ee</i>	nātiō	<i>nah-ti-o</i>
fāgis	<i>fah-geese</i>	obscurior	<i>op-skoo-ri-or</i>
feri	<i>fi-eh-ree</i>	paucae	<i>pow-kigh</i>
fūmāre	<i>foo-mah-reh</i>	vēni	<i>way-nee</i>

8. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS

	VOICELESS; <i>i.e.</i> without vibration of vocal chords	VOICED	ASPIRATES	
P-mutes	p	b	ph	f
T-mutes	t	d	th	s
K-mutes	c, k, qu	g	ch	h
Liquids		l, m, n, r		
Nasals		m, n		
Spirants	f, s, h			
Semivowels		cons. i, v		
Sibilant	s			

VOWEL CHANGES

9. 1. In compounds **ǣ** becomes **ē** before two consonants or a final consonant: **rapīō**, **correptus**; **parīō**, **compertus**; **facīō**, **effectus**; **canō**, **cornicen**.

ǣ becomes **ī** before **ng**: **frangere**, **perfringere**.

ǣ becomes **ī** before a single consonant, but not before **r**: **rapīō**, **abripīō**.

ǣ becomes **u** before labials or before **l** with another consonant: **capiō**, **occupō**; **calcō**, **inculcō**.

ǣ as the final vowel of the stem becomes **ī** before suffixes that begin with a consonant: **doma-**, **domitor**.

ae usually becomes **ī**, and **au** sometimes becomes **ī** or **ō**: **exquīrō** for **exquaerō**; **disclūdō** for **disclaudō**.

2. **ē** is often found in early Latin, where **ī** is found in later: **semul** for **simul**.

In suffixes, before suffixes, before a single consonant, and in the final syllable of a word, it becomes **ī**: **ille**, **illic**; **cādō**, **cecīdī**; **decem**, **ūndecim**.

ē before **r** is often omitted: **frāter**, **frātre**.

3. **ī** final may become **ē**: **mare** for **marī**.

4. **ō**, in syllables not accented, regularly becomes **u**, except in primitive Latin: **servos** = **servus**; **dōnom** = **dōnum**; **vīvont** = **vīvunt**. Note, also, **quom** for **cum**.

5. **u**, prior to Caesar's period, was found in suffixes commencing with labials. It then became **ī**, which is most usual: **māxumus** became **māximus**.

10. 1. **Contraction**. — Successive vowels may contract. The first regularly predominates and is always long: **cōgō** for **coagō**; **nīl** for **nihil**; **iūnior** for **iuvnior**.

2. **Parasitic Vowels**. — In lingual noun-stems a parasitic **u** is often developed, and the form thus made takes the

place of the ancient form, save in poetry and colloquially: *gubernāculum* for *gubernāclum*; *ōrāculum* for *ōrāclum*.

3. **Syncope.**— Sometimes a vowel coming between two consonants is omitted. The most common case is the dropping of a short vowel, particularly *i*, after an accented syllable: *audācter* for *audāciter*; *caldus* for *calidus*.

CONSONANT CHANGES — ASSIMILATION

11. 1. A consonant tends to assimilate to a following sound: *puella* (for *puerla*); *cessī* (for *cedsī*); *corruptus* (for *conruptus*).

2. *g* and *b* before *t* or *s* often become *c* and *p*: *āgtus* = *actus*, *scribtus* = *scriptus*, *scribsī* = *scripsī*.

3. After *l* or *r*, *t* in the suffixes *-tor*, *-tus*, *-tum* becomes *s*: *curtum* = *cursum*.

4. A *t*-mute before *s* is dropped; *dt* or *tt* become *s* or *ss*: *cad-tum* becomes *cāsum*; *mit-tum* becomes *missum*; *virtūt-s* becomes *virtūs*.

5. Final consonants are sometimes omitted: *lāc* for *lāct*.

6. *m* before a dental or a guttural becomes *n*: *quem-dam* becomes *quendam*; *prīnceps* becomes *prīnceps*.

7. A guttural with *s* becomes *x*: *lēgs* = *lēx*.

8. **Rhotacism.**— An *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels: *corpus*, Gen. *corporis*.

12. **Changes in Prepositions.**— When the nature of the two consonants will admit, the final consonant of the preposition is assimilated to the initial consonant of the verb. The most important changes in the prepositions are as follows:—

1. *ab* before vowels, consonant *i*, *b*, *d*, *h*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*.

abs before *c* and *t*: *abscēdō*, *abstineō*.

as before **p** (the **b** being dropped): **asportō**.

ā before **f** in **āfui**, and before **m** and **v**: **āmandō**, **āvertō**.

au before **f** in **aufertō**, **aufugitō**.

2. **ad** before vowels, consonant **i**, **b**, **d**, **f**, **h**, **m**, **n**, **q**, **v**;
before **n**, **ad** may become **an**: **annuere**.

ac before **c**: **accipiō**.

ag and **ad** before **g**: **aggredior** (**adg**-).

a and **ad** before **gn**, **sc**, **sp**, **st**: **āgnōscō** (**adgn**- or **adn**-),
ascribō (**adsc**-), **aspīrō** (**adsp**-), **astringō** (**adst**-).

ad and **al** before **l**: **adligō** (**all**-).

ap and sometimes **ad** before **p**: **appōnō** (**adp**-).

ad and **ar** before **r**: **adripiō** (**arr**-).

ad and **as** before **s**: **adsentior** (**ass**-).

at and **ad** before **t**: **attinēre** (**adt**-).

3. **com** before **b**, **m**, **p**; occasionally **con**: **combūrō**, **com-**
memorō, **comparō**.

con before **c**, **d**, **f**, **g**, consonant **i**, **n**, **q**, **s**, **t**, **v**: **concēdō**,
condūcō, **cōnfirmō**, **congerō**, **coniungō**, **conquīrō**, **cōnscribō**,
contegō, **convincō**.

con and **col** before **l**: **conligō** (**coll**-).

cor and **con** before **r**: **corrigō** (**conr**-).

co before vowels and **h**: **coerceō**, **cohaereō**, but **comedō**
and **comitor**.

cō before **gn**, and before **n** where a loss of **g** has taken
place before the **n**: **cōgnōscō**.

4. **ex** before vowels, **c**, **h**, **p**, **q**, **s**, **t**.

ē before **b**, **d**, **g**, consonant **i**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, **v**: **ēbulliō**, **ēdoceō**,
ēgerō, **ēiectus**, **ēlocō**, **ēmoveō**, **ēnītor**, **ērumpō**, **ēvocō**.

ef (sometimes **ec**) before **f**: **efferō** (better than **ecferō**).

5. **in** before vowels, **h**, **c**, **d**, **f**, **g** (not **gn**), consonant **i**,
n, **q**, **s**, **t**, **v**.

in and **il** before **l**: **inlūcēscō** (**ill**-).

in and **ir** before **r**: **inrēpō** (**irr**-).

im and **in** before **b, m, p** : **imbibō** (**inb-**), **immergō** (**inm-**), **impetrō** (**inp-**).

i before **gn** : **ignōrō**.

6. ob before **m** : **obmōlior**.

oc before **c**, **of** before **f**, **og** before **g**, and **op** before **p** : **occurrō**, **offundō**, **ogganniō**, **oppleō**.

op is often found before **s** and **t**; elsewhere **ob** occurs.

7. per may become **pel** before **l** : **perlūceō** (**pell-**).

8. sub becomes **suc** before **c**, **suf** before **f**, **sug** before **g**, **sub** and **sum** before **m**, **sup** before **p**; **sub** and **sur** before **r**; elsewhere **sub** occurs : **succēdō**, **sufferō**, **suggerō**, **submoveō** (**summ-**), **suppetō**, **subruō** (**surr-**).

9. trāns before vowels, **b, c, f, g, p, r, t, v**.

trān before **sc** and usually before **s**; **trānscedō**, **trānsultō**.

trāns and (less often) **trā** before consonant **i, d, l, m, n**, and **i**.

As a rule, unassimilated forms have the preference.

USE OF CAPITALS

13. With capitals begin : —

The first word of each sentence.

Proper names and words formed therefrom : **Rōma**, *Rome*; **populus Rōmānus**, *the Roman people*.

Adjectival epithets : **Alexander Māgnus**, *Alexander the Great*.

SYLLABLES

14. A word contains as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs.

1. A consonant between two vowels belongs to the latter; a-mō, I love.

2. Successive consonants between two vowels belong to the latter, if they can begin a syllable ; otherwise they are divided : **mā-gnus**, *great* ; **mēn-sa**, *table*.

3. Compounds are divided as their components : **dis-trahō**, *I divide*.

NOTE. — If one of two like consonants has been omitted, the one remaining belongs to the syllable that follows : **trān-scribō**, *I copy*.

ACCENT

15. 1. Words of two syllables accent the Penult (next to the last syllable) : **mén-sa**.

2. Words of more than two syllables accent the Penult, if it is long : **do-lá-bra**, *a mattock* ; otherwise they accent the Antepenult (the syllable before the Penult) : **dó-mi-nus**, *master*.

3. The syllable preceding the enclitics **-ce**, **-que**, **-ne**, **-ve** takes the accent : **itáque**, *and so* ; **Mūsáque**, *and the Muse*. But a particle does not throw the accent on the preceding syllable unless it is a true enclitic : **ítaque**, *therefore*.

4. The final **e** of **-ne** and **-ce** may be dropped without disturbing the accent : **istúc**, **vidén** (= **vidēsne**).

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

16. 1. The quantity of a vowel depends upon the time required to pronounce it, a *long* vowel requiring twice as much time as a short vowel. Thus **ā** = **āā**.

2. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, **nd**, and **nt** : **děus**, *god* ; **nihil**, *nothing* ; **amāndus**, *to be loved* ; **amānt**, *they love*.

3. A vowel before consonant **i** is long, but is short in the compounds of **iugum** ; **māior**, **biugum**.

4. A vowel is long before **gm, gn, nf, ns**, and before **-sc** in inceptive verbs : **frāgmentum, fragment** ; **benīgnus, kind** ; **infrā, below** ; **mēnsa, table** ; **quiēscō, to be quiet**.

5. *Common* vowels are long or short.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

17. 1. A syllable is long or short according to the time required to pronounce it.

2. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel or by a single consonant : **famīlia, domina**.

3. A syllable that ends in a short vowel followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common, though it is regularly short in prose. In poetry it may be long or short : **patrēs**.

4. A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong : **mēnsae**. Contractions are long : **nīl** (= **nihil**).

5. A syllable is long by *position* when its short vowel precedes two consonants, or a double consonant : **est, dux**. But the union of a mute with a following liquid does not make position (see 3. above).

18. **Monosyllables**. — 1. Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long : **mē, tē, sē, sī**.

EXCEPTIONS. — Enclitics are short (**-quē, -nē, -tē, -vē, -cē, -psē, -ptē**) ; also **rē** in compounds.

2. Monosyllables ending in a consonant are short : **āt, sēd, pēr**.

EXCEPTIONS. — **bōs, cūr, dīc, dūc, ēn, fūr, hīc, hūc, lāc, lār, mōs, nōn, ōs, pār, pēs, plūs, quīn, sāl, sīc, sīn, sōl, vēr** ; also verb-forms in **s** ; but **ēs, thou art**.

19. Final Syllables.—Final **a** and **e** are usually short; **i**, **o**, and **u** are usually long. The following are the chief exceptions:—

1. Final **a** is long
In the Ablative of the First Declension: **viā**.
In the Imperative of the First Conjugation: **amā**.
In indeclinable words: **trīgintā**.
2. Final **e** is long
In the Ablative of the Fifth Declension: **diē**.
In the Imperative of the Second Conjugation: **tenē**.
In adverbs from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, except **benē**, **malē**, **saepē**.
3. Final **i** is short
In **nisi**, **quasi**, **cui** (when dissyllabic), and sometimes in **mihī**, **tibī**, **sibī**, **ibī**, **ubī**.
4. Final **o** is short
In **egō**, **duō**, **modō** (adv.).

20. A final syllable ending in any consonant save **s** is short.

Final **as**, **es**, **os** are long; **is**, **us**, **ys** are short. The following are the chief exceptions:—

1. Final **es** is short in the Nominative and Vocative singular of the Third Declension when the Genitive ends in **ētis**, **itis**, **īdis**: **segēs**, **mīlē**, **obsēs**. But note **abiēs**, **ariēs**, **pariēs**, and compounds of **pēs**.

2. Final **is** is long in plural cases; in Nominatives that have the Genitive in **itis**, **inis**: as **Samnis**, **Salamis**; in the second person singular Present Indicative of the Fourth Conjugation; in **velis**, **mālis**, **nōlis**, and compounds of **sīs**.

3. Final **os** is short in **compōs**, **impōs**, **ōs**, and as the Nominative of the Second Declension.

4. Final **us** is long in the Nominative singular of the Third Declension, where the **-u** belongs to the stem, as **palūs**; in the Genitive singular, and in the plural of the Fourth Declension: as **fructūs**.

21. Increment of Nouns. — Any increase in the number of syllables found in the Nominative singular is called an Increment. In the increment of nouns, **a** and **o** are long; other vowels are short.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. **a** is short in masculines in **al** and **ar**, and also in nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant: **Caesāris**; **dāpis**.

2. **o** is short in words in **s** preceded by a consonant, and in neuters of the Third Declension: **inōpis**, **tempōris**.

3. **e** is long after a vowel in the Fifth Declension: **diēi**.

4. **i** is long in words in **ix**: **fēlīcis**.

5. **u** is long in nouns in **ūs** with Genitive in **ūris**, **ūtis**, **ūdis**; **iūris**, **salūtis**, **incūdīs**.

22. Increment of Verbs. — 1. A verb increases when, in any form, it has more syllables than in the second singular Present Indicative Active. In verbal increments **a**, **e**, **o** are long, **i**, **u** are short; but **e** is short before the endings **-ram**, **-rim**, **-ro**: **amāvērat**.

2. **e** is short in the first increment of the Present Indicative Passive and Imperfect Subjunctive Active of the Third Conjugation; also in the Future ending **-beris**, **-bere**: **volvēris**, **volvērem**, **amābēris**, **amābēre**.

23. 1. Adjectives in **-ilis** have short penults, if derived from verbs; long, if from nouns: **horribīlis**, **puerīlis**.

2. Adjectives in **-inus** have long penults, unless they refer to time: **vīcīnus**, *neighboring*; but **pristīnus**, *former*.

3. Verbs with perfects in **-uī** and verbs in **-iō** of the Third Conjugation have a short stem-vowel: **acuō**, *to sharpen*; **faciō**, *to make*.

INFLECTION

24. PARTS OF SPEECH

1. Noun	} declined	} Inflected	5. Adverb, compared	} Not inflected
2. Adjective			6. Preposition	
3. Pronoun			7. Conjunction	
4. Verb	conjugated		8. Interjection	

NOUNS

25. 1. **Classes.** — A proper noun is the proper name of an *individual* person or place: **Cicerō**, *Cicero*; **Italia**, *Italy*. A common noun is the common name of a *class*: **homō**, *man*; **animal**, *animal*.

2. A common noun may be concrete, denoting a person, place, or thing; or abstract, denoting a quality or property: **puer**, *boy*; **oppidum**, *town*; **aqua**, *water*; **timor**, *fear*.

3. A noun denoting a collection of objects is called a collective noun: **exercitus**, *army*.

GENDER

26. Gender is a classification of words corresponding originally to the natural distinctions of sex (natural gender), and later extended to inanimate objects (grammatical gender). Gender has to do only with *words*; sex refers to the *living being*. There are three genders, — Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

27. 1. Names of Living Beings. — Names of persons follow the natural gender: names of males are masculine; names of females are feminine: **pater**, *father*; **māter**, *mother*.

2. Nouns having the same form for the masculine and feminine are said to be of common gender: **parēns**, *parent*; **cīvis**, *citizen*; **canis**, *dog*; **bōs**, *cow*, *ox*.

3. Some nouns have different forms for the masculine and feminine: **rēx**, *king*, **rēgīna**, *queen*; **dominus**, *master*, **domina**, *mistress*; **gallus**, *cock*, **gallīna**, *hen*.

28. 1. Names of Things. — Names of winds, months, mountains (usually), and rivers are masculine.

NOTE. — These rivers are feminine: **Allia**, **Lēthē**, **Matrona**, and **Styx**.

2. The names of towns and countries in **-us** are feminine, while other towns and countries follow the grammatical gender indicated by their endings.

NOTE. — **Pontus** and **Hellēspontus** are masculine.

3. Indeclinable nouns, words and expressions used as nouns, are neuter: **nihil**, *nothing*; **ūltimum valē**, *a last farewell*.

NUMBER AND CASE

29. 1. There are two numbers: the Singular, denoting one; and the Plural, denoting more than one.

2. There are six Cases: —

Nominative (case of subject), answering the question, *who? what?* before a verb.

Genitive (case of complement), answering the question, *whose? whereof?*

Dative (case of indirect object, or of personal interest), answering the question, *to or for whom?*

Accusative (case of direct object), answering the question, *whom? what?* after a verb.

Vocative (case of address).

Ablative (case of adverbial relation), answering the question, *by, through, with what? how? when? whence?*

The **Locative**, denoting Place Where, is confined chiefly to names of towns and small islands. It has the form of the Genitive in singular nouns of the First and Second Declensions, and of the Ablative in other nouns: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*; **Athēnīs**, *at Athens*.

NOTE. — All but the Nominative and Vocative are called oblique cases.

THE STEM

30. The Stem, or fundamental part of a noun, is usually found by dropping the ending of the Genitive plural: **mēnsārum**, stem **mēnsā**; **servōrum**, stem **servō**; **cīvium**, stem **cīvī**.

THE DECLENSIONS

31. There are five Declensions, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and by the ending of the Genitive singular.

	Final Letter of Stem	Ending of Gen. Sing.
First Declension	ā	-ae
Second “	ō	-ī
Third “	ī or a consonant	-īs
Fourth “	ū	-ūs
Fifth “	ē	-ēī, eī

CASES THAT ARE ALIKE

32. The Nominative and Vocative, except in nouns of the Second Declension with the Nominative in **us**.

The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative neuter.

The Dative and Ablative plural.

The Nominative and Accusative plural in the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, generally.

FIRST DECLENSION

ā-Stems

33. Nouns of the First Declension, except nouns denoting male beings, are of the feminine gender, and the Nominative ends in *ā*.

Mēnsa, table; stem mēnsā-		Endings	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> mēnsa, a table (as subject)	mēnsae, tables (as subject)	-ā	-ae
<i>G.</i> mēnsae, of a table, a table's	mēnsārum, of tables, tables'	-ae	-ārum
<i>D.</i> mēnsae, to or for a table	mēnsīs, to or for tables	-ae	-is
<i>Ac.</i> mēnsam, a table (as object)	mēnsās, tables (as object)	-am	-ās
<i>V.</i> mēnsa, O table!	mēnsae, O tables!	-ā	-ae
<i>Ab.</i> mēnsā, in, with, from, by a table	mēnsīs, in, with, from, by tables	-ā	-is

NOTES.—1. *-ās* is an old form of Genitive: *pater familiās*, father of a family. *-āī* is sometimes found in poetry.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural of *filia*, daughter, and *dea*, goddess, usually end in *abus*, to distinguish them from the Dative and Ablative plural of *filius*, son, and *deus*, god.

3. The Genitive plural sometimes has *-um* for *-ārum*, chiefly in Greek words.

GREEK NOUNS

34. Proper names of Greek origin in *-ās*, *-ēs*, and *-ē* (feminine) are declined in the plural like *mēnsa*; in the singular, as follows:—

Aenēās, Aenēae, Aenēae, Aenēam (Aenēān), Aenēā, Aenēā.
 Tydidēs, Tydidae, Tydidae, Tydidēn, Tydidē(-ā), Tydidā.
 epitomē, epitomēs, epitomae, epitomēn, epitomē, epitomē.

NOTE.—Many Greek proper names of the First Declension, with Nominative in *-ēs*, are in Latin put in the Third Declension.

SECOND DECLENSION

ō-Stems

35. Masculines end in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**; neuters, in **-um**; **-us** and **-um** being modifications of **-os** and **-om**, respectively.

ENDINGS OF SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

<i>Nouns in -us.</i>		<i>Nouns in -er and -ir.</i>		<i>Nouns in -um.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> -us	-ī	—	-ī	-um	-a
<i>G.</i> -ī	-ōrum	-ī	-ōrum	-ī	-ōrum
<i>D.</i> -ō	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs
<i>Ac.</i> -um	-ōs	-um	-ōs	-um	-a
<i>V.</i> -e	-ī	—	-ī	-um	-a
<i>Ab.</i> -ō	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs

Servus, m., *slave*; stem **servō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	servus	servī
<i>G.</i>	servī	servōrum
<i>D.</i>	servō	servīs
<i>Ac.</i>	servum	servōs
<i>V.</i>	serve	servī
<i>Ab.</i>	servō	servīs

Bellum, n., *war*; stem **bellō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	bellum	bella
<i>Ac.</i>		
<i>V.</i>		
<i>G.</i>	bellī	bellōrum
<i>D.</i>	bellō	bellīs
<i>Ab.</i>		

Puer, m., *boy*; stem **puerō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	puer	puerī
<i>G.</i>	puerī	puerōrum
<i>D.</i>	puerō	puerīs
<i>Ac.</i>	puerum	puerōs
<i>V.</i>	puer	puerī
<i>Ab.</i>	puerō	puerīs

Ager, m., *field*; stem **agrō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	ager	agrī
<i>G.</i>	agrī	agrōrum
<i>D.</i>	agrō	agrīs
<i>Ac.</i>	agrum	agrōs
<i>V.</i>	ager	agrī
<i>Ab.</i>	agrō	agrīs

Vir, m., *man*; stem **virō-**.

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	vir	virī
<i>G.</i>	virī	virōrum
<i>D.</i>	virō	virīs
<i>Ac.</i>	virum	virōs
<i>V.</i>	vir	virī
<i>Ab.</i>	virō	virīs

NOTES. — 1. Stems in **vo-** and **quo-** originally had **os** and **om** in the Nominative and Accusative. These forms are found especially in older Latin.

2. Words in **-er** and **-ir** have lost the case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative singular. In most of these words the **e** does not belong to the stem, and is lacking in the other cases: **liber**, *book*; **G. librī**.

3. **Puer**, *boy*; **gener**, *son-in-law*; **adulter**, *adulterer*; **Liber**, *Bacchus*; **liberī**, *children*; **socer**, *father-in-law*; **vesper**, *evening*; and compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, as **signifer**, *standard bearer*, **armiger**, *armor-bearer*, have the **e**.

PECULIARITIES

36. 1. Proper names in **-ius** have the Genitive singular in **-ī** for **-iī**, and accent the penult whether it is long or short: **Vergiliī**.

2. All nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, until about 31 B.C., formed the Genitive singular in **-ī**, instead of **-iī**; as **cōnsiliī** from **cōnsilium**, and **filiī** from **filius**.

3. Proper names in **-ius**, **-āius**, and **-ēius**, with **filius**, *son*, have **-ī** in the Vocative singular, accenting the penult; **meus**, *my*, has **mī**.

4. **Deus**, *God*, has no Vocative singular; in the Nominative and Vocative plural it has **dei**, **diī**, **dī**, and in the Dative and Ablative plural **deīs**, **diīs**, **dīs**.

5. Greek proper names in **-eus** have **-eu** in the Vocative: as **Orpheus**, **V. Orpheu**.

6. The following have **-ūm** for **-ōrum** in the Genitive plural:—

Words denoting value and measure: as **nummūm**, *of coins*; **talentūm**, *of talents*. A few other words: as **duūm-virūm**, *of the duumvirs*; **deūm**, *of the gods*; **liberūm**, *of children*; **sociūm**, *of allies*; **fabrūm**, *of workmen*. The regular form in **-ōrum** is also found in these words.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER

37. 1. *Pelagus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus*, crowd, are neuter.

2. *Alvus*, belly; *carbasus*, flax; *colus*, distaff; *humus*, ground; *vannus*, winnowing fan, are feminine.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

38. Masculine and feminine end in -*ōs*, -*ōs*, -*ūs*, -*ūs*, and neuters in -*on*, -*um*.

N.	Dēlos (-us)	Panthūs	Rhododendron
G.	Dēlī	Panthī	Rhododendrī
D.	Dēlō	Panthō	Rhododendrō
Ac.	Dēlon (-um)	Panthūn	Rhododendron
V.	Dēle	Panthū	Rhododendron
Ab.	Dēlō	Panthō	Rhododendrō

THIRD DECLENSION

39. The stem ends in a consonant, or in -*i*, -*u*, or a diphthong.

Consonant stems are imparisyllabic; i-stems are parisyllabic, that is, have the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

TABLE OF ENDINGS

Consonant Stems (*Imparisyllabic*)

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N., V.	-s or none	none	N., V.	-ēs	-a
G.	-is	-is	G.	-um	-um
D.	-ī	-ī	D.	-ibus	-ibus
Ac.	-em	none	Ac.	-ēs	-a
Ab.	-e	-e	Ab.	-ibus	-ibus

i-Stems (*Parisyllabic*)

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N., V.</i>	-s, -ēs, or -is	-e or none	<i>N., V.</i>	-ēs	-ia
<i>G.</i>	-is	-is	<i>G.</i>	-ium	-ium
<i>D.</i>	-ī	-ī	<i>D.</i>	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Ac.</i>	-em (rarely -im)	-e or none	<i>Ac.</i>	-ēs or -is	-ia
<i>Ab.</i>	-e (rarely -ī)	-ī	<i>Ab.</i>	-ibus	-ibus

40. Divisions of Consonant Stems. — Consonant stems are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Nasals, and Fricatives (Spirants), according to the ending of the stem. In the oblique cases the stem appears without change.

MUTE STEMS

41. 1. Mute stems may end: —

In a labial (**b** or **p**): as **trab-s**, **prīncep-s**.

In a dental (**d** or **t**): as **laus** (**laud-s**), **mīles** (**mīlet-s**).

In a guttural (**g** or **c**): as **rēx** (**rēg-s**), **iūdex** (**iūdec-s**).

2. Masculines and feminines have **s** in the Nominative. Before **s** a **p**-mute is retained, a **t**-mute is dropped, and a **k**-mute unites with it to form **x**.

3. Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel **i** into **e** in the nominative.

42. LABIAL AND DENTAL STEMS

Trabs , f., <i>beam</i> ; stem trab- .			Prīnceps , m., <i>chief</i> ; stem prīncip- .		
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	trabs	trabēs	<i>N.</i>	prīnceps	prīncipēs
<i>G.</i>	trabis	trabum	<i>G.</i>	prīncipis	prīncipum
<i>D.</i>	trabī	trabibus	<i>D.</i>	prīncipī	prīncipibus
<i>Ac.</i>	trabem	trabēs	<i>Ac.</i>	prīncipem	prīncipēs
<i>V.</i>	trabs	trabēs	<i>V.</i>	prīnceps	prīncipēs
<i>Ab.</i>	trabe	trabibus	<i>Ab.</i>	prīncipe	prīncipibus

Laus, f., praise ; stem laud- .				Miles, m., soldier ; stem milit- .			
SING.		PLUR.		SING.		PLUR.	
<i>N.</i>	laus	laudēs		<i>N.</i>	miles	militēs	
<i>G.</i>	laudis	laudum (-ium once)		<i>G.</i>	militis	militum	
<i>D.</i>	laudī	laudibus		<i>D.</i>	militī	militibus	
<i>Ac.</i>	laudem	laudēs		<i>Ac.</i>	militem	militēs	
<i>V.</i>	laus	laudēs		<i>V.</i>	miles	militēs	
<i>Ab.</i>	laude	laudibus		<i>Ab.</i>	militē	militibus	

43. GUTTURAL STEMS

Rēx, m., king ; stem rēg- .				Iūdex, m., judge ; stem iūdic- .			
SING.		PLUR.		SING.		PLUR.	
<i>N.</i>	rēx	rēgēs		<i>N.</i>	iūdex	iūdicēs	
<i>G.</i>	rēgis	rēgum		<i>G.</i>	iūdicis	iūdicum	
<i>D.</i>	rēgī	rēgibus		<i>D.</i>	iūdicī	iūdicibus	
<i>Ac.</i>	rēgem	rēgēs		<i>Ac.</i>	iūdicem	iūdicēs	
<i>V.</i>	rēx	rēgēs		<i>V.</i>	iūdex	iūdicēs	
<i>Ab.</i>	rēge	rēgibus		<i>Ab.</i>	iūdice	iūdicibus	

LIQUID STEMS

44. These end in **l**, **r**.

Liquid stems in **l** and **r** form the Nominative without **s**.

Cōsul, m., <i>consul</i> ; stem cōsul- .		Vīctor, m., <i>victor</i> ; stem vīctor- .		Aequor, n., <i>sea</i> ; stem aequor- .		
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	
<i>N.</i>	cōsul	cōsulēs	vīctor	vīctorēs	aequor	aequora
<i>G.</i>	cōsulis	cōsulum	vīctoris	vīctorum	aequoris	aequorum
<i>D.</i>	cōsulī	cōsulibus	vīctorī	vīctoribus	aequorī	aequoribus
<i>Ac.</i>	cōsulem	cōsulēs	vīctorem	vīctorēs	aequor	aequora
<i>V.</i>	cōsul	cōsulēs	vīctor	vīctorēs	aequor	aequora
<i>Ab.</i>	cōsule	cōsulibus	vīctore	vīctoribus	aequore	aequoribus

NASAL STEMS

45. These end in **n**, **hiems**, *winter*, being the only one in **m**.

Most masculines and feminines form the Nominative by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**, while some masculines and most neuters retain the stem-characteristic and change a preceding **i** to **e**.

Virgō , f., <i>virgin</i> ; stem virgin- .		Leō , m., <i>lion</i> ; stem leōn- .		Flūmen , n., <i>river</i> ; stem flūmin- .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> virgō	virginēs	leō	leōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>G.</i> virginis	virginum	leōnis	leōnum	flūminis	flūminum
<i>D.</i> virginī	virginibus	leōnī	leōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
<i>Ac.</i> virginem	virginēs	leōnem	leōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>V.</i> virgō	virginēs	leō	leōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Ab.</i> virgine	virginibus	leōne	leōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

FRICATIVES (SPIRANTS)

s-Stems

46. The Nominative has no additional **s**, and changes **e** to **i** in masculines before **s**, and in neuters **e** or **o** to **u**. In the oblique cases the **s** of the stem usually becomes **r** between two vowels, and in a few words this **r** has crept into the Nominative (cf. 11. 8).

Genus , n., <i>race</i> ; stem genes- .		Corpus , n., <i>body</i> ; stem corpos- .		Mōs , m., <i>custom</i> ; stem mōs- .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> genus	genera	corpus	corpora	mōs	mōrēs
<i>G.</i> generis	generum	corporis	corporum	mōris	mōrum
<i>D.</i> generī	generibus	corporī	corporibus	mōrī	mōribus
<i>Ac.</i> genus	genera	corpus	corpora	mōrem	mōrēs
<i>V.</i> genus	genera	corpus	corpora	mōs	mōrēs
<i>Ab.</i> genere	generibus	corpore	corporibus	mōre	mōribus

VOWEL STEMS

47.

i-Stems

Nūbēs, f., <i>cloud</i> ; stem nūbi-.		Hostis, c., <i>enemy</i> ; stem hosti-.		Animal, n., <i>animal</i> ; stem animālī-.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. nūbēs	nūbēs	hostis	hostēs	animal	animālia
G. nūbis	nūbium	hostis	hostium	animālis	animālīum
D. nūbī	nūbibus	hostī	hostibus	animālī	animālībus
Ac. nūbem	nūbis(-ēs)	hostem	hostis(-ēs)	animal	animālia
V. nūbēs	nūbēs	hostis	hostēs	animal	animālia
Ab. nūbe	nūbibus	hoste	hostibus	animālī	animālībus

1. Some genuine consonant-stems have the Nominative in *-is*; as *canis*, *dog*.

2. Some *-i*-stems have, in the Nominative, the form of consonant-stems; as *mors*, *death*, for *mortis*.

Vowel Stems in *ū*, *ī*, and in Diphthongs

Sūs, c., <i>swine</i> ; stem sū-.		Bōs, c., <i>ox, cow</i> ; stem bou-.		Vīs, f., <i>force</i> ; stem vī-.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. sūs	suēs	bōs	bovēs	vīs	virēs
G. suis	suum	bovis	{ bovim boum	vīs (rare)	virium
D. suī	{ suibus subus	bovī	{ bōbus būbus	vī	viribus
Ac. suem	suēs	bovem	bovēs	vim	virēs
V. sūs	suēs	bōs	bovēs		virēs
Ab. sue	{ suibus subus	bove	{ bōbus būbus	vī	viribus

Add to the above *Iuppiter* (G. *Iovis*, D. *Iovī*, Ac. *Iovem*, V. *Iuppiter*, Ab. *Iove*) for *Iou-pater*.

48. IRREGULAR NOUNS

	Senex , m., <i>old man</i> .		Carō , f., <i>flesh</i> .		Os , n., <i>bone</i> .	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	senex	senēs	carō	carnēs	os	ossa
<i>G.</i>	senis	senum	carnis	carnium	ossis	ossium
<i>D.</i>	senī	senibus	carnī	carnibus	ossi	ossibus
<i>Ac.</i>	senem	senēs	carnem	carnēs	os	ossa
<i>V.</i>	senex	senēs	carō	carnēs	os	ossa
<i>Ab.</i>	sene	senibus	carne	carnibus	osse	ossibus

PECULIARITIES OF CASE-FORMS

49. 1. The following regularly have the Accusative singular in **-im**: *amussis*, *rule*; *būris*, *plowbeam*; *sitis*, *thirst*; *tussis*, *cough*; *vis*, *force*, and names of towns and rivers in **-is**.

2. These usually have **-im** in the Accusative singular: *febris*, *fever*; *puppis*, *stern*; *pelvis*, *basin*; *restis*, *rope*; *secūris*, *ax*; *turris*, *tower*.

3. These sometimes have **-im** in the Accusative singular: *bipennis*, *battle ax*; *clāvis*, *key*; *cutis*, *skin*; *crātis*, *hurdle*; *messis*, *harvest*; *neptis*, *granddaughter*; *nāvis*, *ship*; *praesēpis*, *stall*; *sēmentis*, *sowing*.

4. The following nouns have **-ī** in the Ablative singular:—

Those that have the Accusative in **-im**.

Neuter vowel stems with Nominatives in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**.

Names of months in **-is**, and adjective vowel stems of the Third Declension.

Often *amnis*, *river*; *avis*, *bird*; *cīvis*, *citizen*; *imber*, *rain*; *nāvis*, *ship*; and *ignis* in the phrases *ferrō ignique*, *with fire and sword*; *aquā et ignī interdīcere*, *to cut off from fire and water*.

NOTE.—Names of towns, and adjectives used as proper names, have **e**; also **iuvenis** and **aedilis**.

5. Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar** have **-ia** in the Nominative plural.

6. The following nouns have **-ium** in the Genitive plural:—

Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**.

Parisyllables in **-ēs**, **-er**, **-is**, except **ambāgēs**, *circumlocution*; **canis**, *dog*; **iuvenis**, *young man*; **senex**, *old man*; **pater**, *father*; **māter**, *mother*; **frāter**, *brother*; **accipiter**, *hawk*.

Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant, except **ops**, **lynx**, **pēs**.

Nix, *snow*; **nox**, *night*; **os**, *bone*.

Polysyllables in **-ns** and **-rs**.

Folk names in **-ās** (G. **-ātis**) and **-īs** (G. **itis**).

Also **nostrātium**, *of our countrymen*; **vestrātium**, *of your countrymen*; **optimātium**, *of the aristocrats*; **penātium**, *of the Penates*.

GENDER OF THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

50. 1. **Masculine**.—Nouns in **-ō**, **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, and imparisyllables in **-ēs**, **-es**.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. **carō**, *flesh*; nouns in **-dō**, **-gō**; abstracts and collectives in **-iō**, fem. But the following are masculine: **cardō**, *hinge*; **ōrdō**, *row*; **ligō**, *hoe*.

2. **arbor**, *tree*, fem.; **cor**, *heart*; **ador**, *grain*; **marmor**, *marble*; **aequor**, *sea*, neut.

3. **cōs**, *whetstone*; **dōs**, *dowry*, fem.; **ōs**, *mouth*, neut.

4. **linter**, *skiff*, fem.; **cadāver**, *corpse*; **iter**, *way*; **tūber**, *tumor*; **ūber**, *udder*; **vēr**, *spring*; **verber**, *lash*, and botanical names in **-er**, neut.

5. **compēs**, *fetter*; **quiēs**, *rest*; **mercēs**, *pay*; **merges**, *sheaf*; **seges**, *crop*; **teges**, *mat*, fem.

2. **Feminine.**—Nouns in **-ās, -as, -is, -ūs, -us, -aus, -x, -s** after a consonant, and parisyllables in **-ēs**.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. **ās** (a copper coin); **vās**, *surety*, masc.; **vās**, *vessel*, neut.

2. Nouns in **-nis** and **-guis**; **axis**, *axle*; **collis**, *hill*; **canālis**, *canal*; **caulis**, *stalk*; **cucumis**, *cucumber*; **ēnsis**, *sword*; **fascis**, *fagot*; **fūstis**, *cudgel*; **lapis**, *stone*; **mēnsis**, *month*; **piscis**, *fish*; **postis**, *post*; **pulvis**, *dust*; **orbis**, *circle*; **sentis**, *brier*; **torris**, *firebrand*; **vectis**, *lever*, masc.

3. **mūs**, *mouse*, and **sūs**, *pig*, are common; other monosyllables in **-ūs** are neuter.

4. Nouns in **-ex** (G. **-icis**); as **iūdex**, *judge*; **grex**, *flock*; **calix**, *cup*; **fornix**, *vault*, masc.

5. **dēns**, *tooth*; **fōns**, *fountain*; **mōns**, *mountain*; **pōns**, *bridge*; **cliēns**, *client*; **rūdēns**, *rope*, masc.

3. **Neuter.**—Nouns in **-a, -e, -c, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ut, and -us** (G. **-eris, -oris, -uris**).

EXCEPTIONS.—**sāl**, *salt*; **sōl**, *sun*, and stems in **-l**; **turtur**, *turtle dove*, and **vultur**, *vulture*; **pecten**, *comb*; **lepus**, *hare*, masc.; nouns in **-us**, with Genitive in **-ūtis**, and **-ūdis**, fem.

51. TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
-al	-ālis	animal	<i>animal</i>
	-ālis	Hasdrubal	<i>Hasdrubal</i>
-āl	-ālis	sāl	<i>salt</i>
-el	-ellis	fel	<i>gall</i>
-il	-ilis	vigil	<i>sentry</i>
	-ilis	Tanaquil	<i>Tanaquil</i>
-ōl	-ōlis	sōl	<i>sun</i>

TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD
DECLENSION — *Continued*

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
-ul	-ulis	exsul	<i>exile</i>
-en	-inis	flāmen	<i>priest</i>
-ar	-āris	calcar	<i>spur</i>
	-aris	iubar	<i>light</i>
-ār	-arris	fār	<i>grain</i>
-er	-eris	later	<i>tile</i>
	-ris	frāter	<i>brother</i>
	-ineris	iter	<i>way</i>
-ēr	-ēris	vēr	<i>spring</i>
-or	-ōris	āctor	<i>agent</i>
	-oris	marmor	<i>marble</i>
	-ordis	cor	<i>heart</i>
-ur	-uris	vultur	<i>vulture</i>
	-oris	rōbur	<i>oak</i>
-ūr	-ūris	fūr	<i>thief</i>
-āc	-actis	lāc	<i>milk</i>
-ēc	-ēcis	allēc	<i>pickle</i>
-ut	-itis	caput	<i>head</i>
-e	-is	mare	<i>sea</i>
-ō	-ōnis	Saxō	<i>Saxon</i>
-ō	-ōnis	pāvō	<i>peacock</i>
	-inis	homō	<i>man</i>
	-nis	carō	<i>flesh</i>
-ās	-āsis	vās	<i>dish</i>
	-aris	mās	<i>male</i>
	-ssis	ās	<i>a copper coin</i>
	-ātis	cīvitās	<i>state</i>
-as	-adis	vas	<i>surety</i>
	-atis	anas	<i>duck</i>
-aes	-aedis	praes	<i>surety</i>
	-ris	aes	<i>brass</i>
-aus	-audis	laus	<i>praise</i>

TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD
DECLENSION — *Continued*

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
-ēs	-is	caedēs	<i>slaughter</i>
	-edis	pēs	<i>foot</i>
	-eris	Cerēs	<i>Ceres</i>
	-etis	ariēs	<i>ram</i>
	-ētis	quiēs	<i>rest</i>
-es	-etis	seges	<i>crop</i>
	-idis	obses	<i>hostage</i>
	-itis	comes	<i>companion</i>
-is	-is	collis	<i>hill</i>
	-idis	lapis	<i>stone</i>
	-inis	sanguis	<i>blood</i>
	-eris	pulvis	<i>dust</i>
-is	-itis	lis	<i>lawsuit</i>
	-iris	glis	<i>dormouse</i>
	-ōdis	cūstōs	<i>keeper</i>
-ōs	-ōdis	flos	<i>flower</i>
	-ōtis	dōs	<i>dowry</i>
	-ovis	bōs	<i>ox, cow</i>
	-ssis	os	<i>bone</i>
-us	-udis	pecus	<i>cattle</i>
	-uris	Ligus	<i>a Ligurian</i>
	-oris	litus	<i>shore</i>
	-eris	onus	<i>burden</i>
	-uis	grūs	<i>crane</i>
-ūs	-ūdis	incūs	<i>anvil</i>
	-ūris	tellūs	<i>earth</i>
	-ūtis	virtūs	<i>virtue</i>
	-ltis	puls	<i>porridge</i>
-m(p)s	-mis	hiems	<i>winter</i>
-ns	-adis	glāns	<i>acorn</i>
	-ntis	mōns	<i>mountain</i>
-rs	-rdis	vēcors	<i>silly</i>

TYPICAL NOMINATIVES AND GENITIVES OF THE THIRD
DECLENSION — *Continued*

NOMINATIVE ENDING	GENITIVE ENDING	LATIN WORD	MEANING
	-rtis	ars	art
-bs	-bis	urbs	city
-ps	-pis	daps	feast
-eps	-ipis	princeps	chief
	-upis	auceps	fowler
-āx	-ācis	pāx	peace
-ax	-acis	fax	torch
-aex	-aecis	faex	dregs
-aux	-aucis	(faux)	throat
-ex	-ecis	nex	death
	-icis	iūdex	judge
	-egis	grex	flock
	-igis	rēmex	rower
-ēx	-ēcis	vervēx	wether
	-icis	vibēx	weal
	-ēgis	lēx	law
-lex	-lectilis	supellex	furniture
-ix	-icis	cervix	neck
-ix	-icis	fornix	cellar
	-igis	strix	screech owl
	-ivis	nix	snow
-ōx	-ōcis	vōx	voice
-ox	-ocis	praecox	premature
	-ogis	Allobrox	Allobrogian
	-octis	nox	night
-ux	-cis	crux	cross
	-ugis	coniūx	husband, wife
-ūx	-ūcis	lūx	light
	-ūgis	frūx	fruit
-lx	-lcis	falx	sickle
-nx	-ncis	lynx	lynx
-rx	-rcis	arx	citadel

GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

52. 1. Nominative singular:—

$\omega\nu$, in names of men, usually becomes **-ō**: **Platō**.

2. Accusative singular:—

āēr, **aethēr**, and names of places end in **-ā**: **āera**, **aethera**, **Babylōna**.

Parisyllables in **-is** end in **-im**: **basim**, *pedestal*.

3. Genitive singular:—

Parisyllabic proper names in **-ēs** often have **-ī** in the Genitive: **Aristīdī**, of *Aristides*.

Feminine proper names in **-ō** have the Genitive in **-ūs** and the other cases like the Nominative, or they may be declined as Latin nouns: **Dīdō**, **Dīdūs**, **Dīdō**, **Dīdō**, **Dīdō**, **Dīdō**; or **Dīdō**, **Dīdōnis**, etc.

4. Vocative singular:—

Proper names in **-ās** (G. **-antis**), **-is**, and **-ys** drop **-s**: **Atlā**, **Charybdi**, **Coty**.

Proper names in **-eus** usually drop **-s**: **Orpheu**. In prose such nouns usually follow the Second Declension, save in the Vocative.

5. Ablative singular:—

Parisyllables in **-is** have **-i**: **basī**.

6. Nominative plural, **-ēs**: **Hērōēs**.

7. Genitive plural:—

-ōn ($\omega\nu$) is retained in the titles of books: **Metamorphōseōn**. **-um** usually takes the place of $\omega\nu$, and **-ium** of $\epsilon\omega\nu$: **Gigantum**, **Sardium**.

8. Dative and Ablative plural:—

Words in **-ma** have **-īs** for **-ibus**: **poēmatīs**, in *poems*.

9. Accusative plural:—

Folk-names have the Greek form **-ās**, as well as **-ēs**: **Cyclōpās** and **Cyclōpēs**.

FOURTH DECLENSION (*u*-DECLENSION)

53. The Nominative ends in **-us** for masculines, and **-ū** for neuters.

CASE ENDINGS

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	-us	-ū	-ūs	-ua
<i>G.</i>	-ūs	-ūs	-uum	-uum
<i>D.</i>	-uī (-ū)	-ū	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Ac.</i>	-um	-ū	-ūs	-ua
<i>V.</i>	-us	-ū	-ūs	-ua
<i>Ab.</i>	-ū	-ū	-ibus	-ibus

MASCULINES (IN **-us**)

Exercitus, m., *army*; stem **exercitu-**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum
<i>D.</i>	exercituī (-ū)	exercitibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs
<i>V.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus

NEUTERS (IN **-ū**)

Cornū, n., *horn*; stem **cornu-**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>G.</i>	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>V.</i>	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	cornū	cornibus

NOTE. — The endings are those of the Third Declension, the **-u** of the stem usually absorbing the vowel of the ending. The **-u** is lost before **-ibus** in the Dative and Ablative plural.

PECULIARITIES

54. 1. These usually have **-ubus** in the Dative and Ablative plural: **artūs** (plur.), *limbs*; **partus**, *birth*; **portus**, *harbor*; **tribus**, *tribe*; **verū**, *spit*, and dissyllables in **-cus**.

2. **Domus** has also the following forms of the Second Declension:—

domī (Locative), *at home*
domō, *from home*

domum, *homewards*
domōs (plur.), *homewards*

3. The following are feminine: **acus**, *needle*; **domus**, *house*; **īdūs** (plur.), *Ides*; **manus**, *hand*; **porticus**, *porch*; **tribus**, *tribe*.

4. In early Latin, nouns in **-us** often have the Genitive singular in **-ī**: **senātī**, *of the senate*.

FIFTH DECLENSION

55. The stem ends in **-ē**; Nominative in **-a**.

Diēs, m., <i>day</i> ; stem diē-		Rēs, f., <i>thing</i> ; stem rē-		CASE ENDINGS	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. diēs	diēs	N. rēs	rēs	N. -ēs	-ēs
G. diēī	diērum	G. reī	rērum	G. -ēī	-ērum
D. diēī	diēbus	D. reī	rēbus	D. -ēī	-ēbus
Ac. diem	diēs	Ac. rem	rēs	Ac. -em	-ēs
V. diēs	diēs	V. rēs	rēs	V. -ēs	-ēs
Ab. diē	diēbus	Ab. rē	rēbus	Ab. -ē	-ēbus

1. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except **merīdiēs**, *midday*, masculine, and **diēs**, masculine or feminine in the singular, masculine in the plural.

2. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout.

3. The Genitive and Dative singular have **-ē** after a vowel, **-ē** after a consonant.

4. The Genitive and Dative singular sometimes end in **-ē** instead of **-ēī**.

5. Note the Genitive form **plēbī** (as if from Nominative **plēbēs**), which is occasionally found.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS

56. 1. Certain classes of nouns are usually found only in the singular. These are proper names, abstract nouns, names of materials: **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **iūstitia**, *justice*;

aurum, *gold*. But **Caesarēs**, *the Caesars*; **iūstitiæ**, *instances of justice*; **aera**, *bronzes*.

2. In the plural only are:—

Island groups, mountains, cities, feasts: **Baliārēs**, *the Balearic Islands*; **Alpēs**, *the Alps*; **Syrācūsæ**, *Syracuse*; **Sāturnālia**, *the Saturnalia*.

3. MOST IMPORTANT WORDS USED IN PLURAL ONLY

angustiae , <i>narrow pass</i>	māiōrēs , <i>ancestors</i>
arma , <i>weapons</i>	Mānēs , <i>ghost</i>
bīgae , <i>pair</i> (used in singular, though rare)	minae , <i>threats</i>
brācae , <i>breeches</i>	moenia , <i>walls</i>
cassēs , <i>net</i>	nārēs , <i>nose</i>
dēliciae , <i>delight</i>	Nōnae , <i>the Nones</i>
dīvitiae , <i>riches</i>	nūptiae , <i>marriage</i>
epulae , <i>feast</i>	posterī , <i>descendants</i>
exsequiae , <i>obsequies</i>	praecordia , <i>diaphragm</i>
fastī , <i>calendar</i>	quadrīgae , <i>a team of four</i>
faucēs , <i>throat</i>	reliquiae , <i>remainder</i>
Idūs , <i>the Ides</i>	scālae , <i>ladder</i>
indūtiae , <i>treaty</i>	tenebrae , <i>darkness</i>
īnsidiae , <i>ambush</i>	valvae , <i>door leaves</i>
	vīscera , <i>entrails</i>

Kalendae, *the Kalends*

57. WORDS WITH DIFFERENT MEANINGS IN SINGULAR AND PLURAL

aedēs , <i>temple</i>	aedēs , <i>house</i>
aqua , <i>water</i>	aquae , <i>springs</i>
auxilium , <i>aid</i>	auxilia , <i>auxiliaries</i>
balneum , (<i>private</i>) <i>bath</i>	balneae , <i>public baths</i>
bonum , <i>good</i>	bona , <i>property</i>
carcer , <i>prison</i>	carcerēs , <i>barriers of racecourse</i>
castrum , <i>fort</i>	castra , <i>camp</i>
comitium , <i>place of assembly</i>	comitia , <i>election</i>
cōpia , <i>plenty</i>	cōpiae , <i>forces</i>
finis , <i>end</i>	finēs , <i>boundaries</i>

fortūna, *fortune*
grātia, *favor*
hortus, *garden*
impedimentum, *obstacle*
littera, *letter of alphabet*
opera, *work*
(ops) opis (Gen.), *aid*
pars, *part*
sāl, *salt*
tabula, *board, picture*
vīs, *force*

fortūnae, *riches*
grātia, *thanks, the Graces*
horti, *pleasure grounds*
impedimenta, *baggage*
litterae, *letter (epistle)*
operae, *workmen*
opēs, *resources*
partēs, *party, part*
salēs, *witticisms*
tabulae, *writing tablets*
vīrēs, *strength*

58. Heteroclitēs have forms of two declensions.

1. The following have singular forms of one declension, and plural forms of another:—

SING.

balneum, *bath*, 2d
dēlicium, *delight*, 2d
epulum, *banquet*, 2d
iūgerum, *acre*, 2d
vās, *vessel*, 3d

PLUR.

balneae, 1st
dēliciae, 1st
epulae, *feast*, 1st
iūgera, 3d
vāsa, 2d

2. Some nouns of the First Declension have also forms of the Fifth Declension in the Nominative and Accusative:—

lūxuria and **lūxuriēs**, *luxury*
lūxuriam and **lūxuriem**

māteria and **māteriēs**, *timber*
māteriam and **māteriem**

3. **Requiēs**, *rest*, has no plural in use; in the singular, it is of the Third and Fifth Declensions: Nom., Voc. **requiēs**, Gen. **requiētis**, Dat. —, Acc. **requiētem** or **requiem**, Abl. **requiēte** or **requiē**.

4. **Plēbs** (Gen. **plēbis**), *commons*, has also **plēbēs**, Gen. **plēbeī** and **plēbī** in the expression **tribūnus plēbī**.

5. **Vesper**, *evening*, has Gen. **vesperī** or **vesperis**, Acc. **vesperum**, Abl. **vesperō** or **vespere**.

6. **Famēs**, *hunger*, of the Third Declension, has Abl. **famē** of the Fifth.

59. **Heterogeneous** nouns have different genders in the singular and the plural. The most common are:—

SING.	PLUR.
balneum , n., <i>bath</i>	balneae , f.
carbasus , f., <i>flax</i>	carbasa , n., <i>sails</i>
dēlicium , n.	dēliciae , f.
epulum , n., <i>banquet</i>	epulae , f., <i>feast</i>
frēnum , n., <i>bridle</i>	frēnī , m., and frēna , n.
locus , m., <i>jest</i>	locī , m., and ioca , n.
locus , m., <i>place</i>	locī , topics, m., and loca , n., <i>localities</i>
rāstrum , n., <i>rake</i>	rāstrī , m., and rāstra , n.
Tartarus , m., <i>Tartarus</i>	Tartara , n.
Thūrium , n., <i>Thurium</i>	Thūrii , m.

60. Indeclinable nouns are neuter, and are used only in the Nominative and Accusative singular.

fās , <i>right</i>	nefās , <i>impiety</i>
īnstar , <i>likeness</i>	nihil , <i>nothing</i>
māne , <i>morning</i>	secus , <i>sex</i>

61. 1. Some nouns are found only in the Ablative singular: **concessū**, *with the permission*; **iūssū**, *by the command*; **nātū**, *by birth*.

2. These are used in two cases only: **fors**, *chance*, **forte** (Nominative and Ablative singular); **spontis**, *free will*, **sponte** (Genitive and Ablative singular).

3. **Nēmō**, *no one*, is regularly used only in the Nominative, Dative, and Accusative singular, **nēminī**, **nēminem**. The Genitive and Ablative singular, **nūllus** and **nūllō**, and the whole plural are borrowed from **nūllus**.

4. **Opis**, **dapis**, **frūgis** (Gen.) have no Nominative singular.

5. **Impetus**, *onset*, of the Fourth Declension, and many monosyllables have no Genitive plural: as **iūx**, **sōl**, and **ōs**.

6. **Vēnum**, *sale*, is usually found only in the Accusative, in such phrases as **vēnum dare**, *to sell*.

7. **Precī**, **precem**, **prece**, *prayer*, is not used in the Nominative and Genitive singular.

8. **Vicis**, **vicem**, **vice**, *turn*, lacks the Nominative and Dative singular and the Genitive plural.

ADJECTIVES

62. Adjectives denote quality. They take the forms (a) of the First and Second Declensions; (b) of the Third Declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

63. 1. These form their feminine like nouns of the First Declension, and their masculine and neuter like nouns of the Second Declension.

2. ENDINGS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

-us, -a, -um: as **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum**

-er, -ra, -rum: as **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**

-ur, -a, -um: as **satur**, **satura**, **saturum**

3.

Bonus, *good*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
V.	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

4.

Liber, free.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>G.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>D.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Ac.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>V.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Ab.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

5. **Asper**, *rough*; **lacer**, *torn*; **miser**, *wretched*; **prōsper**, *prosperous*; **tener**, *tender*; compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**, and sometimes **dexter**, *right*, are declined like **liber**. In other adjectives, the **e** does not belong to the stem: thus, **niger**, *nigra*, **nigrum**; **pulcher**, *pulchra*, **pulchrum**.

6. The Genitive singular masculine and neuter of adjectives in **-ius** ends in **-iī**, while the Vocative ends in **-ie**: Nom. **agrārius**; Gen. **agrāriī**; Voc. **agrārie**.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

64. 1. There are nine irregular adjectives: **ūllus**, *any*; **nūllus**, *none*; **ūnus**, *one*; **sōlus**, *alone*; **alius**, *another*; **tōtus**, *whole*; **alter**, *the other*; **uter**, *which of two?* and **neuter**, *neither*.

All except **sōlus** lack the Vocative, and are regular in the plural.

2. **Ūllus**, **nūllus**, **tōtus**, **sōlus**, **ūnus** are declined alike:—

<i>N.</i>	nūllus	nūlla	nūllum
<i>G.</i>	nūllius	nūllius	nūllius
<i>D.</i>	nūllī	nūllī	nūllī
<i>Ac.</i>	nūllum	nūllam	nūllum
<i>Ab.</i>	nūllō	nūllā	nūllō

3. **Uter** and **neuter** are declined alike:—

<i>N.</i>	uter	utra	utrum
<i>G.</i>	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>D.</i>	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>Ac.</i>	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>Ab.</i>	utrō	utrā	utrō

4. **Alter**, **altera**, **alterum** has **-ius** in the Genitive and **-ī** in the Dative, but sometimes Dative feminine **-ae**.

5. **Alius**, **alia**, **aliud**, has **-ius** in the Genitive and **-ī** in the Dative, but generally uses the Genitive of **alter**, instead of its own; or **aliēnus** may be used.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

65. These adjectives are declined like nouns of the Third Declension, and in the Nominative have three terminations, two terminations, or one termination.

1. THREE TERMINATIONS

Ācer, sharp.					
	SING.			PLUR.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācria
<i>G.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium
<i>D.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Ac.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-is)	ācria
<i>V.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Ab.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus

2. TWO TERMINATIONS

Facilis, easy.				
	SING.		PLUR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	facilis	facile	facilēs	facilia
<i>G.</i>	facilis	facilis	facilium	facilium
<i>D.</i>	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus
<i>Ac.</i>	facilem	facile	facilēs (-is)	facilia
<i>V.</i>	facilis	facile	facilēs	facilia
<i>Ab.</i>	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus

3. ONE TERMINATION

Fēlix, *happy*.

SING.		PLUR.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i> fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>G.</i> fēlicis	fēlicis	fēlicium	fēlicium
<i>D.</i> fēlicī	fēlicī	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
<i>Ac.</i> fēlicem	fēlix	fēlicēs (-īs)	fēlicia
<i>V.</i> fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Ab.</i> fēlicī	fēlicī	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

4. **Particeps**, *sharing*.

SING.		PLUR.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i> particeps	particeps	participēs	participa
<i>G.</i> participis	participis	participum	participum
<i>D.</i> participī	participī	participibus	participibus
<i>Ac.</i> participem	particeps	participēs	participa
<i>V.</i> particeps	particeps	participēs	participa
<i>Ab.</i> participē	participē	participibus	participibus

In the same way are declined **compos**, *master of*; **pauper**, *poor*; **princeps**, *chief*; **sōspes**, *safe*; **superstes**, *surviving*; and **vetus**, Gen. **veteris**, *old*. So also **dīves**, *rich*, but its neuter plural is **dītia**.

5. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Monēns, *warning*.

SING.		PLUR.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i> monēns	monēns	monentēs	monentia
<i>G.</i> monentis	monentis	monentium	monentium
<i>D.</i> monentī	monentī	monentibus	monentibus
<i>Ac.</i> monentem	monēns	monentēs (-īs)	monentia
<i>V.</i> monēns	monēns	monentēs	monentia
<i>Ab.</i> monentī (-e)	monentī (e)	monentibus	monentibus

6. DECLENSION OF A COMPARATIVE

Altior, higher.

	SING.		PLUR.
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N., V.</i> altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
<i>G.</i> altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
<i>D.</i> altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
<i>Ac.</i> altiōrem	altius	altiōres	altiōra
<i>Ab.</i> altiōre (-ī)	altiōre (-ī)	altiōribus	altiōribus

7. **Plūs, more.**

	SING.		PLUR.
	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
<i>D.</i>	—	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs (-īs)</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>V.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>plūre</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

NOTE. — In the singular, **plūs** is a neuter substantive.

66. Adjectives of the Third Declension have **-ī** in the Ablative singular; **-ia** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural, neuter; **-īs** and **-ēs** in the Accusative plural, masculine and feminine, and **-ium** in the Genitive plural.

EXCEPTIONS. — 1. Comparatives have **-e** in the Ablative singular, **-a** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural, neuter, and **-um** in the Genitive plural; **plūrēs** and **complūrēs** have **-a** (and **-ia**) and **-ium**.

2. **Inops**, *needy*, and **memor**, *mindful*, have **-ī** in the Ablative singular, but **-um** in the Genitive plural.

3. Participial adjectives in **-āns** and **-ēns**, when used as nouns or participles, have **-e** in the Ablative singular; otherwise, **-ī**. Thus, **Caesare praesente**, *while Caesar was present*; but in **praesentī periculō**, *during the present danger*.

4. Many adjectives of one termination have, in accordance with their meaning, no neuter endings: for example, **pauper**, *poor*; **dīves**, *rich*.

5. **Frūgī**, *frugal*, and **nēquam**, *worthless*, are indeclinable.

6. The nouns **ultor**, **ultrix**, *avenger*, and **victor**, **victrix**, *conqueror*, are used as adjectives also, and in poetry have a neuter plural: **victoria arma**, Verg. Aen. III. 54, *victorious arms*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

67. There are three degrees of comparison, to denote different degrees of quality:—

1. The Positive, which simply attaches quality to an object without comparing it with any other object: as **puer bonus**, *a good boy*.

2. The Comparative, which implies comparison between two objects: as **puer melior**, *the better boy*.

3. The Superlative, which compares an object with at least two other objects: as **puer optimus**, *the best boy*.

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

68. To form the Comparative, **-ior** (neuter **-ius**) is added to the stem of the Positive. Vowel stems drop their characteristic vowel before adding the endings. Thus **altus**, *high*, on the stem **alto-** forms the Comparative **altior** (neuter **altius**).

69. The Superlative is formed by adding **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the Positive. Vowel stems drop their characteristic vowel before adding these endings. Thus **altus**, *high*, has **altissimus**, **-a**, **-um** for the Superlative.

1. Adjectives in **-er** add **-rimus** to the Nom. sing. masc.: as **pulcher**, *beautiful*; Superlative **pulcherrimus**, *most beautiful*.

2. **Vetus**, *old*, has **veterrimus**, *oldest*, and **mātūrus** has **mātūrissimus** and **mātūrrimus**, *most mature*.

3. Six adjectives form their Superlative by adding **-limus** : —

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
facilis , <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
difficilis , <i>difficult</i>	difficilior	difficillimus
similis , <i>like</i>	similior	simillimus
dissimilis , <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis , <i>slender</i>	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis , <i>low</i>	humilior	humillimus

4. Adjectives in **-dicus**, **-ficus**, **-volus** have **-entior** in the Comparative and **-entissimus** in the Superlative: **benevolus**, *benevolent*, **benevolentior**, **benevolentissimus**.

NOTE. — **Egēnus**, *needy*, and **prōvidus**, *provident*, also have **-entior** and **-entissimus**, but these forms are really from the corresponding present participles of **egēre**, *to be in need*, and **prōvidēre**, *to provide*.

5. **Nēquam** has **nēquior**, **nēquissimus**; **frūgī** has **frūgālior**, **frūgālistissimus**; **dīves** has **dīvitior** and **dītior**, **dīvitissimus** and **dītissimus**.

6. These adjectives are compared with change of stem : —

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus , <i>good</i>	melior	optimus
malus , <i>bad</i>	pēior	pessimus
māgnus , <i>great</i>	māior	māximus
parvus , <i>small</i>	minor	minimus
multus , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimus

ADJECTIVES WITHOUT TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON*

70. 1. Most adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, except adjectives in **-quus** : **idōneus**, *favorable*; **pīus**, *filial*.

2. Many adjectives in *-ālis*, *-ilis*, *-ilis*, *-bilis*.

3. Many adjectives denoting material, duration, color, or indicating connection with some living thing: *ferreus*, *iron*; *sempiternus*, *everlasting*; *flāvus*, *yellow*; *equinus*, *of a horse*.

Such adjectives are compared by prefixing *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*: as *magis idōneus*, *māximē idōneus*.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

71. 1. Positive lacking, but Comparative and Superlative suggested by a preposition:—

Preposition	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<i>citrā</i> , on this side	—	<i>citerior</i> , nearer	<i>citimus</i>
<i>dē</i> , down	—	<i>dēterior</i> , worse	<i>dēterrīmus</i>
<i>extrā</i> , outside	—	<i>exterior</i> , outer	{ <i>extrēmus</i> <i>extimus</i>
<i>intrā</i> , within	—	<i>interior</i> , inner	<i>intimus</i>
<i>prae</i> , before	—	<i>prior</i> , former	<i>prīmus</i>
<i>post</i> , after	—	<i>posterior</i> , later	{ <i>postrēmus</i> , last <i>postumus</i> , late-born
<i>prope</i> , near	—	<i>propior</i> , nearer	<i>proximus</i>
<i>ultrā</i> , beyond	—	<i>ulterior</i> , farther	<i>ūltimus</i>

Also, from the archaic *potis*, *possible*, *potior*, *preferable*, *potissimus*.

2. Comparative lacking, or supplied from other adjectives:—

<i>falsus</i> , false	—	<i>falsissimus</i>
<i>fīdus</i> , faithful	—	<i>fīdissimus</i>
<i>novus</i> , new	<i>recentior</i>	{ <i>novissimus</i> , last <i>recentissimus</i> , newest
<i>sacer</i> , sacred	—	<i>sacerrimus</i>
<i>vetus</i> , old	<i>vetustior</i>	<i>veterrimus</i>

3. Superlative lacking, or supplied from other adjectives:—

iūvenis , <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
ingēns , <i>immense</i>	ingentior	—
longinquus , <i>afar</i>	longinquior	—
propinquus , <i>near</i>	propinquior	—
senex , <i>old</i>	senior	māximus nātū
alacer , <i>brisk</i>	alacrior	—
salūtāris , <i>wholesome</i>	salūtārior	—

4. Positive expressed by a preposition or an adjective:—

Preposition	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
infṛā , <i>below</i>	inferus , <i>lower</i>	inferior , <i>lower</i>	īnfimus īmus
supṛā , <i>above</i>	superus , <i>upper</i>	superior ,	supṛemus summus

72.

NUMERALS

ADJECTIVES: Cardinal, answering the question, *How many?* *One, two, etc.*
Ordinal, answering the question, *What rank?* *First, second, etc.*
Distributive, *One each, two each, etc.*
ADVERBS: *Once, twice, etc.*

I. CARDINALS

1. I.	ūnus, -a, -um
2. II.	duo, -ae, -o
3. III.	trēs, tria
4. IV.	quattuor
5. V.	quīque
6. VI.	sex
7. VII.	septem
8. VIII.	octō
9. IX.	novem
10. X.	decem
11. XI.	ūndecim
12. XII.	duodecim
13. XIII.	tredecim
14. XIV.	quattuordecim

II. ORDINALS

primus
secundus
tertius
quartus
quīntus
sextus
septimus
octāvus
nōnus
decimus
ūndecimus
duodecim
tertius decimus
quartus decimus

15. XV.	quīndecim	quintus decimus
16. XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18. XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus
19. XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20. XX.	vīgintī	vicēsīmus (vigēsīmus)
21. XXI.	ūnus et vigintī or vīgintī ūnus	ūnus et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus primus.
28. XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus (vicēsīmus octāvus)
29. XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus
30. XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus (trigēsīmus)
40. XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60. LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70. LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80. LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90. XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
99. IC.	ūndēcentum, or nōnāgintā novem, or novem et nōnāgintā.	ūndēcētēsīmus
100. C.	centum	centēsīmus
101. CI.	centum et ūnus, or centum ūnus	centēsīmus primus, or centēsīmus et primus
200. CC.	ducentī	ducentēsīmus
400. CD.	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsīmus
500. D or IO.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600. DC or IOC.	sēscentī	sēscentēsīmus
1000. M or CIO.	mille	millēsīmus
2000. MM or IIM.	duo milia	bis millēsīmus
5000. IOO.	quīnque milia	quīnquēs millēsīmus
100,000. CCCIOOO.	centum milia	centiēs millēsīmus.
1,000,000. CCCCIOOOO.	{ deciēs centēna milia	deciēs centiēs millēsīmus

NOTE 1.— Adding O on the right of I multiplies by 10. Putting C before as often as O stands after multiplies by 2.

2. The ending **-ēnsīmus** often takes the place of **-ēsīmus**: thus **vīcēnsīmus** = **vīcēsīmus**.

III. DISTRIBUTIVES

1. singuli, -ae, -a
2. bīni, -ae, -a
3. terni (trīni)
4. quaterni
5. quīni
6. sēni
7. septēni
8. octōni
9. novēni
10. dēni
11. ūndēni
12. duodēni
13. terni dēni
14. quaterni dēni
15. quīni dēni
16. sēni dēni
17. septēni dēni
18. octōni dēni or duodēvicēni
19. novēni dēni or ūndēvicēni
20. vicēni
21. vicēni singuli
28. duodētricēni
29. ūndētricēni
30. tricēni
40. quadrāgēni
50. quinquāgēni
60. sexāgēni
70. septuāgēni
80. octōgēni
90. nōnāgēni
99. ūndēcentēni
100. centēni
101. centēni singuli
200. ducēni
400. quadringēni
500. quīngēni
600. sēscēni

IV. ADVERBS

- semel
bis
ter
quater
quīnquiēs
sexiēs
septiēs
octiēs
noviēs
deciēs
ūndeciēs
duodeciēs
ter deciēs
quater deciēs
quīndeciēs, quīnquiēs deciēs
sēdeciēs, sexiēs deciēs
septiēs deciēs
octiēs deciēs or duodēviciēs
noviēs deciēs or ūndēviciēs
viciēs
semel et viciēs, or viciēs semel
(viciēs et semel)
duodētriciēs
ūndētriciēs
triciēs
quadrāgiēs
quīnquāgiēs
sexāgiēs
septuāgiēs
octōgiēs
nōnāgiēs
ūndēcentiēs
centiēs
centiēs semel
ducentiēs
quadringentiēs
quīngentiēs
sēscentiēs

1000.	singula milia	miliēs
2000.	bina milia	bis miliēs
5000.	quīna milia	quīnquiēs miliēs
100,000.	centēna milia	centiēs miliēs
1,000,000.	deciēs centēna milia	deciēs centiēs miliēs.

NOTE.—The ending *-iēns* often takes the place of *-iēs*: thus, *quīnquiēns* = *quīnquiēs*.

73. Of the cardinals, only *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and the hundreds, from *ducenti* to *mille*, are declined. The ordinals are declined like adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>G.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>D.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Ac.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>V.</i>	ūne (rare)	ūna	ūnum	—	—	—
<i>Ab.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

			Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	
<i>N.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>G.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>D.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Ac.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Ab.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

	Neut. Plur.	
<i>N.</i>	<i>milia</i>	<i>ambō</i> , like <i>duo</i> <i>ducenti</i> , like the plural of <i>bonus</i> (but Gen. plur. <i>ducentum</i>)
<i>G.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>	
<i>D.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>	
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>milia</i>	
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>	

74. 1. *ūnus* has a plural: —

With nouns that have no singular: *ūnae nūptiae*, *one marriage*.

With nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *ūna vestimenta*, *one suit of clothes*.

Meaning *also, only, alone*: **Ubiī, quī ūnī lēgātōs mīserant, ōrābant**, Caes. B. G. IV. 16, *The Ubii, who alone had sent ambassadors, begged.*

2. **mīlle** is an indeclinable adjective in the singular; in the plural it is a noun, and declined as above.

3. Compounds of *eight* and *nine* are usually formed by subtraction: **ūndētrīgintā**, 29. From 20 to 100, the smaller number, followed by **et**, precedes; or the larger number precedes, and **et** is omitted: **ūnus et vīgintī**, or **vīgintī ūnus**, 21. Above 100, the larger number precedes: **centum ūnus**, or **centum et ūnus**, 101. Of three or more numerals, the larger always precedes the smaller: **duo mīlia quadringentī septuāgintā**, 2470.

PRONOUNS

75. A Pronoun is a word that stands in place of a noun. Often, however, a pronoun is used *with* a noun, and then is really an adjective.

76. **Classes of Pronouns.** — 1. Personal. 2. Possessive. 3. Reflexive. 4. Demonstrative. 5. Intensive. 6. Relative. 7. Interrogative. 8. Indefinite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

77. There is no Personal Pronoun of the third person, its place being supplied by the Demonstrative **is**.

First Person, ego, I.			Second Person, tū, thou, you.		
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	ego	nōs		tū	vōs
<i>G.</i>	meī	nostrum (nostri)		tuī	vestrum (vestri)
<i>D.</i>	mihi	nōbis		tibi	vōbis
<i>Ac.</i>	mē	nōs		tē	vōs
<i>V.</i>	—	—		tū	vōs
<i>Ab.</i>	mē	nōbis		tē	vōbis

1. **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are Partitive Genitives.
2. The suffix **-met** sometimes strengthens the Personal Pronouns: **egomet**, **nōsmet**.
3. **Tū** is sometimes strengthened by **-te**: **tūte**.
4. With the Ablative of the Personal Pronoun, the preposition **cum** is enclitic: **mēcum**, **vōbliscum**.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

78. The Possessive Adjectives of the first and second persons are **meus**, **-a**, **-um**, *my, mine*; **noster**, **-tra**, **-trum**, *our, ours*; **tuus**, **-a**, **-um**, *thy, thine*; **vester**, **-tra**, **-trum**, *your, yours*. They are derived from the Personal Pronouns. The Possessive Adjective of the third person, derived from the Reflexive (79), is **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, *his, her, its, their (own)*.

NOTES. — 1. When reference is not made to the subject of the clause, use **ēius** for *his, her, its*, **eōrum** or **eārum** for *their*.

But the Possessives are commonly omitted, unless they are needed for emphasis or clearness.

2. **Meus** has Vocative sing. masc. **mī**.

3. The enclitic **-pte** is sometimes found with the Ablative of the Possessives, especially with **suō**, **suā**.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

79. The Reflexive refers to the subject. The Reflexive Pronouns of the first and second persons are supplied by the oblique cases of the Personal Pronouns: **mihi**, *to myself*; **vōs**, *yourselves*. The third person has a special reflexive form, alike for all genders, singular and plural.

G. **suī**, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves, etc.*

D. **sibi**

Ac. **sē** (**sēsē**)

Ab. **sē** (**sēsē**)

NOTE. — With the Ablative, **cum** is postpositive.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

80. The Demonstratives are used both as pronouns and adjectives. They point out an object as in some place, or as previously mentioned. They are: **hic**, *this* (at, or near the speaker); **iste**, *that* (at, or near the person addressed); **ille**, *that* (remote from the speaker); **is**, *that* (weaker and more general than **ille**); **idem**, *the same*. **Is** is also used to supply the place of the lacking personal pronoun of the third person.

Hic, *this*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>G.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>D.</i>	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
<i>Ac.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Ab.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	his	his	his

Iste, *that*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>G.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>D.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Ac.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Ab.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Ille, *that*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>G.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>D.</i>	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Ac.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Ab.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

Is, this, that, he.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	is	ea	id	eī (iī, ī)	eae	ea
<i>G.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>D.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
<i>Ac.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ab.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

Idem, the same.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	idem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem iīdem idem }	eaedem	eadem
<i>G.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>D.</i>	eidem	eidem	eidem	{ eīsdem iīsdem isdem }	iīsdem	iīsdem
<i>Ac.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Ab.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem isdem }	iīsdem	iīsdem

NOTE. — The forms of *hic* that end in *s* may be strengthened by the addition of *-ce*: *hūiusce*, *hīsce*, *hōsce*. This same ending is used with forms of *iste* and *ille*: thus *istūc* = *istud*, and *illūc* = *illud*.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

81.

Ipsē, myself, yourself, himself.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>G.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>D.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Ac.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Ab.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

82. The Relative Pronoun is **quī**, *who, which, what, that*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. An Ablative, **quī**, is found in **quīcum**. **Quis** is occasionally found for **quibus**.

2. **Quīcumque** (**quaecumque**, **quodcumque**), *whoever*, has a generalizing force: **quodcumque hōc rēgnī**, Verg. Aen. I. 78, *All this realm*.

3. **quisquis**, **quicquid**, and (adj.) **quodquod**, *whoever, whatever*, is rare, except in the masculine singular Nominative and Ablative, and the neuter Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative. Both parts of the compound are declined.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

83. Substantive **quis**? *who? what?* has no plural. The adjective form **quī**? *what kind of?* is declined like the Relative, both in the singular and the plural.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
<i>N.</i>	quis	quid
<i>G.</i>	cūius	cūius
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quid
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quō

1. The Ablative **quī** is sometimes found: **quī fit**? *how does it happen?*

2. **Quis** has also an adjectival use: **quis rēx?** *what king?*

3. **Quis** and **qui** may be intensified by **-nam**: **quisnam?** *who, pray?*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

84. Only the pronominal part is declined.

SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
1. quis	quid	quī	quae (qua)	quod
		<i>Neut. Pl. quae and qua</i>		

Meaning: *any one, anything.* Use: generally after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**, **ec**, and in relative sentences.

nē quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī caperet, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 2, *that the state should suffer no harm.*

2. aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
		<i>Neut. Pl. aliqua</i>		

The substantive and adjective forms are occasionally interchanged.

Meaning: *some one, something.* Use: in affirmative sentences.

aliquis adest, *some one is present*; **ire in aliquās terrās**, Cic. Cat. I. 20. 18, *to go into some (other) lands.*

3. quispiam	quidpiam	quispiam	quaequam	quodpiam
-------------	----------	----------	----------	----------

Meaning: *any one, anything.* Use: in affirmative sentences.

quaequam cohors, Caes. B. G. V. 35, *any cohort.*

4. quisquam	quicquam	—	—	—
	(quidquam)			

The Ablative singular and all of the plural are supplied by **illius**.

Meaning: *any.* Use: in negative sentences and in sweeping conditions.

si quisquam, **ille sapiēns fuit**, Cic. Lael. 2. 9, *he was wise, if any one (was).*

SUBSTANTIVE			ADJECTIVE		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
5. { quivis	quaevis	quidvis	quivis	quaevis	quodvis
{ quilibet	quaelibet	quidlibet	quilibet	quaelibet	quodlibet

Meaning: *any one you wish, any one at all.*

ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam, Caes. B. G. III. 13, *for enduring whatever violence and force you wish.*

6. quidam quaedam quiddam quidam quaedam quoddam

In declension, the **m** becomes **n** before **-dam**: **quendam hominem dēlēgit**, Caes. B. G. III. 18, *he chose a certain man.*

Meaning: *a certain one.*

quidam ex his, Caes. B. G. II. 17, *some of these.*

7. quisque quidque quisque quaeque quodque

Meaning: *each one.*

quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, Caes. B. G. II. 21, *into whatever part each one came by chance from the work.*

85.

CORRELATIVES

Demonstrative	Interrogative and Relative	General Relatives	Indefinite
tālis, <i>such</i>	quālis, <i>what kind of; as</i>	quālis cumque, <i>of whatever kind</i>	
tantus, <i>so great; so much</i>	quantus, <i>how great; as great; how much; as much</i>	quantus cumque, <i>however great</i> quantum cumque, <i>however much</i>	aliquantus, <i>some-what great;</i> some considerable amount
tot, <i>so many</i>	quot, <i>how many; as many</i>	quot cumque, <i>however many</i>	aliquot, <i>some</i>
(totus, -a, -um, <i>such; so great</i>)	quotus, -a, -um, <i>which; what? (in order)</i>		

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

86. 1. The following adjectives and their compounds frequently have a pronominal force:—

ūnus, one; *ūllus*, any one; *uter*? which of the two? *alter*, the other of two; *neuter*, neither of the two; *nūllus*, no one.

2. *alter uter* is declined in two ways; either both parts, or only the second part: *alter uter*, *altera utra*, *alterum utrum*, etc.; or, *alteruter*, *alterutra*, *alterutrum*.

VERBS

VOICE

87. 1. Verbs have two voices, Active and Passive. The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: *deus mundum regit*, *God rules the world*. The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb: *mundus a deō regitur*, *the world is ruled by God*.

2. Verbs are Transitive when their action passes over to an object: *amō deum*, *I love God*. They are Intransitive when their action is confined to the subject: *puer currit*, *the boy runs*.

Some verbs have both a transitive and an intransitive use.

CONJUGATION

88. Verbs are inflected in two forms, corresponding to the two voices, called the Active and the Passive.

1. **Mood.**—Verbs have three moods: Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, and the following verbal forms: Infinitive, Gerund, Supine (verbal nouns); Participle, and Gerundive (verbal adjectives).

2. **Tense.**—The Indicative has six tenses: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect. The Subjunctive has four: Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. The Imperative has two: Present and Future.

3. **Person and Number.**—There are three persons: First, Second, and Third; and two numbers: Singular and Plural.

89. **Deponent Verbs.**—Verbs with Passive form and Active meaning are called Deponent: *hortor, I encourage*.

1. Verbs deponent only in the Perfect Participle and tenses from it are called Semi-Deponents, or Neuter Passives:—

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, to dare.

fidēō, fidere, fīsus sum, to trust.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, to rejoice.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, to be accustomed.

2. The Perfect Passive Participles of *adolēscō, to grow up*; *cēnō, to dine*; *pōtō, to drink*; *prandeō, to breakfast*, have an active force; *iūrātus*, from *iūrō, to swear*, is active or passive.

VERB-STEMS

90. The Stems of a verb are those forms which are made from the root of the verb by adding a vowel or a combination of a vowel and a consonant.

1. Tenses formed on the Present Stem:—

Active and Passive	{	Present: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, Gerundive.
		Imperfect: Indicative, Subjunctive.
		Future: Indicative, Imperative.

2. Tenses formed on the Perfect Stem:—

Active	Perfect: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive.
	Pluperfect: Indicative, Subjunctive.
	Future Perfect: Indicative.

3. Tenses formed on the Participial Stem:—

Perfect Passive: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Participle.

Pluperfect Passive: Indicative, Subjunctive.

Future Perfect Passive: Indicative, Infinitive.

Future Infinitive: Active and Passive.

Future Active Participle, Supine.

PERSONAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

91. **Indicative and Subjunctive**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1st Pers., -m., -ō (Pf. Ind. -ī)	-mus	1st Pers., -r	-mur
2d “ -s (Pf. Ind. -stī)	-tis (Pf. Ind. -stis)	2d “ -ris (-re)	-mini
3d “ -t	-nt (Pf. Ind. -runt, -re)	3d “ -tur	-ntur

Imperative*Present*

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
2d Pers., (none)	2d Pers., -te	2d Pers., -re	2d Pers., -mini

Future

2d Pers., -tō	2d Pers., -tōte	2d Pers., -tor	2d Pers., (lacking)
3d “ -tō	3d “ -ntō	3d “ -tor	3d “ -ntor

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

92. 1. There are four Conjugations, which are distinguished by the vowel of the ending of the Present Infinitive. In the Active voice, the Present Infinitive ends:

In the First Conjugation in **-āre** (A-Conjugation).

In the Second Conjugation in **-ēre** (E-Conjugation).

In the Third Conjugation in *-ĕre* (Consonant Conjugation).
In the Fourth Conjugation in *-ĭre* (I-Conjugation).

NOTE. — Stems ending in *u-* belong to the Third Conjugation; as *minuere*.

2. The Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation ends in *-ō*; of the Second in *-eō*; of the Third in *-ō* (or *-iō*); of the Fourth in *-iō*.

3. **Principal Parts.** — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Passive Participle (if the verb has one, otherwise the Supine or the Future Participle), are called the Principal Parts of a Verb, as they embrace the various stems on which the verb is built.

93. THE AUXILIARY VERB *sum, esse, fui, to be*

Indicative Mood

PRESENT

SINGULAR

su-m, I am

e-s, thou art

es-t, he is

PLURAL

su-mus, we are

es-tis, you are

su-nt, they are

IMPERFECT

eram, I was

erās, thou wast

erat, he was

erāmus, we were

erātis, you were

erant, they were

FUTURE

erō, I shall be

eris, thou wilt be

erit, he will be

erimus, we shall be

eritis, you will be

erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fui, I have been, I was

fuiſti, thou hast been, thou wast

fuit, he has been, he was

fuiſmus, we have been, we were

fuiſtis, you have been, you were

fuiſerunt (fuĕre), they have been, they were

PLUPERFECT

SINGULAR

fueram, I had been
fuerās, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been

PLURAL

fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, you will have been
fuerit, he will have been

fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

Subjunctive Mood¹

PRESENT

sim, I may be
sīs, thou mayst be, mayst thou be
sit, he may be, let him be

sīmus, we may be, let us be
sītis, you may be, be ye
sint, they may be, let them be

IMPERFECT

essem, I might be
essēs, thou mightst be
esset, he might be

essēmus, we might be
essētis, you might be
essent, they might be

NOTE. — *forem, forēs, foret, forent*, are occasionally used.

PERFECT

fuerim, I may have been
fueris, thou mayst have been
fuerit, he may have been

fuerimus, we may have been
fueritis, you may have been
fuerint, they may have been

PLUPERFECT

fuissem, I should have been
fuisseēs, thou wouldst have been
fuisset, he would have been

fuissemus, we should have been
fuisseētis, you would have been
fuisissent, they would have been

¹ Note that, while a translation of the various tenses of the Subjunctive and Infinitive is given, there are many cases where the translation is to be determined by the context. This is true of verbs of all the conjugations.

Imperative Mood

SINGULAR

- PRES. 2. *es, be thou*
 FUT. 2. *estō, thou shalt be*
 3. *estō, he shall be*

PLURAL

2. *este, be ye*
 2. *estōte, ye shall be*
 3. *suntō, they shall be*

Infinitive

- esse, to be*
fuisse, to have been

Participle

- PRES. *lacking*
 FUT. *futūrus, about to be*

futūrus esse or fore, to be about to be

In like manner the compounds: **absum**, *to be absent*; **adsum**, *to be present*; **dēsum**, *to be lacking*; **insum**, *to be in*; **intersum**, *to be between*; **obsum**, *to be against*; **praesum**, *to be over*; **prōsum**, *to be of advantage* (infinitive **prōdesse**, the -**d** being dropped before a consonant, as in **prōsunt**); **subsum**, *to be under*, and **supersum**, *to be over*. **Absum** and **praesum** have a Present Participle, **absēns** and **praesēns**.

94. SYNOPSIS OF THE CONJUGATIONS

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE
A. Present	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{am} \\ \text{mone} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \bar{o}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ame} \\ \text{monea} \\ \text{rega} \\ \text{audia} \end{array} \right\} \text{in}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audī} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regē} \\ \text{audiē} \end{array} \right\} \text{ns}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audī} \end{array} \right\} \text{re}$
	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{am} \\ \text{mone} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \text{or}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ame} \\ \text{monea} \\ \text{rega} \\ \text{audia} \end{array} \right\} \text{r}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audī} \end{array} \right\} \text{re}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amār} \\ \text{monēr} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audīr} \end{array} \right\} \text{i}$
A. Imperfect	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regē} \\ \text{audiē} \end{array} \right\} \text{bam}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audī} \end{array} \right\} \text{rem}$			
	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regē} \\ \text{audiē} \end{array} \right\} \text{bar}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audī} \end{array} \right\} \text{rer}$			

SYNOPSIS OF THE CONJUGATIONS— *Continued*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE
A. <i>Future</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{bō} \\ \\ \\ \text{am} \end{array}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regi} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{tō} \\ \\ \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{tūrus} \\ \\ \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tūrus} \\ \\ \text{esse} \\ \end{array}$
P.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{reg} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{bor} \\ \\ \\ \text{ar} \end{array}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{monē} \\ \text{regi} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{tor} \\ \\ \end{array}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tum} \\ \\ \text{iri} \\ \end{array}$
A. <i>Perfect</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amāv} \\ \text{monu} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{i} \\ \\ \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amāv} \\ \text{monu} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{erim} \\ \\ \end{array}$			$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amāv} \\ \text{monu} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{isse} \\ \\ \end{array}$
P.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tus} \\ \text{sum} \\ \\ \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tus} \\ \text{sim} \\ \\ \end{array}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{tus} \\ \\ \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tus} \\ \text{esse} \\ \\ \end{array}$
A. <i>Pluperf.</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amāv} \\ \text{monu} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{eram} \\ \\ \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amāv} \\ \text{monu} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{issem} \\ \\ \end{array}$			
P.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tus} \\ \text{eram} \\ \\ \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tus} \\ \text{essem} \\ \\ \end{array}$			
A. <i>Fut. Perf.</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amāv} \\ \text{monu} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{erō} \\ \\ \end{array}$				
P.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tus} \\ \text{erō} \\ \\ \end{array}$				$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tum} \\ \text{fore} \\ \\ \end{array}$
GERUNDIVE		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ama} \\ \text{mone} \\ \text{rege} \\ \text{audie} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{ndus} \\ \\ \end{array}$	SUPINE	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{amā} \\ \text{moni} \\ \text{rēc} \\ \text{audi} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{tum, tū} \\ \\ \\ \end{array}$	

95.

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

SECOND CONJUGATION

Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT				PRESENT			
<i>I love</i>		<i>I may love</i>		<i>I advise</i>		<i>I may advise</i>	
S.	am-ō		amem	S.	mone-ō		moneam
	amā-s		amēs		monē-s		moneās
	ama-t		amet		mone-t		moneat
P.	amā-mus		amēmus	P.	monē-mus		moneāmus
	amā-tis		amētis		monē-tis		moneātis
	ama-nt		ament		mone-nt		moneant
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
<i>I was loving</i>		<i>I might love</i>		<i>I was advising</i>		<i>I might advise</i>	
S.	amābam		amārem	S.	monēbam		monērem
	amābās		amārēs		monēbās		monērēs
	amābat		amāret		monēbat		monēret
P.	amābāmus		amārēmus	P.	monēbāmus		monērēmus
	amābātis		amārētis		monēbātis		monērētis
	amābant		amārent		monēbant		monērent
FUTURE				FUTURE			
<i>I shall love</i>				<i>I shall advise</i>			
S.	amābō			S.	monēbō		
	amābis				monēbis		
	amābit				monēbit		
P.	amābimus			P.	monēbimus		
	amābitis				monēbitis		
	amābunt				monēbunt		
PERFECT				PERFECT			
<i>I (have) loved</i>		<i>I may have loved</i>		<i>I (have) advised</i>		<i>I may have advised</i>	
S.	amāvī		amāverim	S.	monuī		monuerim
	amāvistī		amāveris		monuistī		monueris
	amāvīt		amāverit		monuīt		monuerit
P.	amāvimus		amāverimus	P.	monuimus		monuerimus
	amāvistis		amāveritis		monuistis		monueritis
	amāvērunt (-ēre)		amāverint		monuērunt (-ēre)		monuerint

ACTIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

Regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus

THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT		PRESENT	
<i>I rule</i>	<i>I may rule</i>	<i>I hear</i>	<i>I may hear</i>
S. reg-ō	regam	S. audi-ō	audiam
regi-s	regās	audi-s	audiās
regi-t	regat	audi-t	audiat
P. regi-mus	regāmus	P. audi-mus	audiāmus
regi-tis	regātis	audi-tis	audiātis
regu-nt	regant	audiu-nt	audiant
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
<i>I was ruling</i>	<i>I might rule</i>	<i>I was hearing</i>	<i>I might hear</i>
S. regēbam	regerem	S. audiēbam	audirēm
regēbās	regerēs	audiēbās	audirēs
regēbat	regeret	audiēbat	audiret
P. regēbāmus	regerēmus	P. audiēbāmus	audirēmus
regēbātis	regerētis	audiēbātis	audirētis
regēbant	regerent	audiēbant	audirent
FUTURE		FUTURE	
<i>I shall rule</i>		<i>I shall hear</i>	
S. regam		S. audiam	
regēs		audiēs	
reget		audiet	
P. regēmus		P. audiēmus	
regētis		audiētis	
regent		audient	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
<i>I (have) ruled</i>	<i>I may have ruled</i>	<i>I (have) heard</i>	<i>I may have heard</i>
S. rēxī	rēxerim	S. audīvī	audiverim
rēxistī	rēxeris	audivistī	audiveris
rēxit	rēxerit	audivit	audiverit
P. rēximus	rēxerimus	P. audivimus	audiverimus
rēxistis	rēxeritis	audivistis	audiveritis
rēxērunt	rēxerint	audivērunt	audiverint
(-ēre)		(-ēre)	

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

SECOND CONJUGATION

Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I had loved</i>		<i>I had advised</i>	
<i>I might have loved</i>		<i>I might have advised</i>	
S. amāveram	amāvissem	S. monueram	monuissē
amāverās	amāvissēs	monuerās	monuissēs
amāverat	amāvisset	monuerat	monuisset
P. amāverāmus	amāvissēmus	P. monuerāmus	monuissēmus
amāverātis	amāvissētis	monuerātis	monuissētis
amāverant	amāvissent	monuerant	monuissent
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>I shall have loved</i>		<i>I shall have advised</i>	
S. amāverō		S. monuerō	
amāveris		monueris	
amāverit		monuerit	
P. amāverimus		P. monuerimus	
amāveritis		monueritis	
amāverint		monuerint	
IMPERATIVE		IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
S. 2. amā, love thou		S. 2. monē, advise thou	
P. 2. amā-te, love ye		P. 2. monē-te, advise ye	
FUTURE		FUTURE	
S. 2. amā-tō, thou shalt love		S. 2. monē-tō, thou shalt advise	
3. amā-tō, he shall love		3. monē-tō, he shall advise	
P. 2. amā-tōte, you shall love		P. 2. monē-tōte, you shall advise	
3. amā-ntō, they shall love		3. mone-ntō, they shall advise	
SUPINES		SUPINES	
1. Ac. amātum, to love		1. Ac. monitum, to advise	
2. Ab. amātū, to love, be loved		2. Ab. monitū, to advise, be advised	

ACTIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

Regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I had ruled</i>	<i>I might have ruled</i>	<i>I had heard</i>	<i>I might have heard</i>
S. rēxeram	rēxissem	S. audiveram	audivissem
rēxerās	rēxisseās	audiverās	audivisseās
rēxerat	rēxisset	audiverat	audivisset
P. rēxerāmus	rēxissemus	P. audiverāmus	audivissemus
rēxerātis	rēxissetis	audiverātis	audivissetis
rēxerant	rēxisent	audiverant	audivissent
FUTURE PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>I shall have ruled</i>		<i>I shall have heard</i>	
S. rēxerō		S. audiverō	
rēxeris		audiveris	
rēxerit		audiverit	
P. rēxerimus		P. audiverimus	
rēxeritis		audiveritis	
rēxerint		audiverint	
IMPERATIVE		IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
S. 2. rege, rule thou		S. 2. audi, hear thou	
P. 2. regi-te, rule ye		P. 2. audi-te, hear ye	
FUTURE		FUTURE	
S. 2. regi-tō, thou shalt rule		S. 2. audi-tō, thou shalt hear	
3. regi-tō, he shall rule		3. audi-tō, he shall hear	
P. 2. regi-tōte, you shall rule		P. 2. audi-tōte, you shall hear	
3. regu-ntō, they shall rule		3. audiu-ntō, they shall hear	
SUPINES		SUPINES	
1. Ac. rēctum, to rule		1. Ac. audītum, to hear	
2. Ab. rēctū, to rule, be ruled		2. Ab. auditū, to hear, be heard	

ACTIVE VOICE**FIRST CONJUGATION****Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus****SECOND CONJUGATION****Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

INFINITIVE	
PRES.	amāre , <i>to love</i>
PERF.	amāvisse , <i>to have loved</i>
FUT.	amātūrus esse , <i>to be about to love</i>
GERUND	
N.	(amāre , <i>loving</i>)
G.	amandī , <i>of loving</i>
D.	amandō , <i>for loving</i>
Ac.	amandum , <i>loving</i>
Ab.	amandō , <i>by loving</i>
PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	amāns , <i>loving</i>
FUT.	amātūrus , <i>about to love</i>

INFINITIVE	
PRES.	monēre , <i>to advise</i>
PERF.	monuisse , <i>to have advised</i>
FUT.	monitūrus esse , <i>to be about to advise</i>
GERUND	
N.	(monēre , <i>advising</i>)
G.	monendī , <i>of advising</i>
D.	monendō , <i>for advising</i>
Ac.	monendum , <i>advising</i>
Ab.	monendō , <i>by advising</i>
PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	monēns , <i>advising</i>
FUT.	monitūrus , <i>about to advise</i>

96.

PASSIVE VOICE**FIRST CONJUGATION****Amor, amārī, amātus sum****SECOND CONJUGATION****Moneor, monērī, monitus sum**

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
<i>I am loved</i>	<i>I may be loved</i>
S. am-or	amer
amā-ris (-re)	amēris (-re)
amā-tur	amētur
P. amā-mur	amēmur
amā-mini	amēmini
ama-ntur	amentur

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
<i>I am advised</i>	<i>I may be advised</i>
S. mone-or	monear
monē-ris (-re)	moneāris (-re)
monē-tur	moneātur
P. monē-mur	moneāmur
monē-mini	moneāmini
mone-ntur	moneantur

ACTIVE VOICE**THIRD CONJUGATION****Regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus****FOURTH CONJUGATION****Audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus**

THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
INFINITIVE		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	regere, <i>to rule</i>	PRES.	audire, <i>to hear</i>
PERF.	rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>	PERF.	audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	FUT.	auditūrus esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>
GERUND		GERUND	
N.	(regere, <i>ruling</i>)	N.	(audire, <i>hearing</i>)
G.	regendī, <i>of ruling</i>	G.	audiendī, <i>of hearing</i>
D.	regendō, <i>for ruling</i>	D.	audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>
Ac.	regendum, <i>ruling</i>	Ac.	audiendum, <i>hearing</i>
Ab.	regendō, <i>by ruling</i>	Ab.	audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>
PARTICIPLES		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	regēns, <i>ruling</i>	PRES.	audiēns, <i>hearing</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus, <i>about to rule</i>	FUT.	auditūrus, <i>about to hear</i>

PASSIVE VOICE**THIRD CONJUGATION****Regor, regī, rēctus sum****FOURTH CONJUGATION****Audior, audīrī, audītus sum**

THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
INDICATIVE		INDICATIVE	
SUBJUNCTIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
<i>I am ruled</i>	<i>I may be ruled</i>	<i>I am heard</i>	<i>I may be heard</i>
S. reg-or	regar	S. audi-or	audiar
rege-ris (-re)	regāris (-re)	audi-ris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
regi-tur	regātur	audi-tur	audiātur
P. regi-mur	regāmur	P. audi-mur	audiāmur
regi-mini	regāmini	audi-mini	audiāmini
regu-ntur	regantur	audi-untur	audiantur

PASSIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

Amor, amārī, amātus sum

SECOND CONJUGATION

Moneor, monērī, monitus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
IMPERFECT				IMPERFECT			
<i>I was loved</i>		<i>I might be loved</i>		<i>I was advised</i>		<i>I might be advised</i>	
S. amābar	amābāris (-re)	amābātur	amābāmur	S. monēbar	monēbāris (-re)	monēbātur	monēbāmur
P. amābāmur	amābāmini	amābantur		P. monēbāmur	monēbāmini		
FUTURE				FUTURE			
<i>I shall be loved</i>				<i>I shall be advised</i>			
S. amābor	amāberis (-re)	amābitur		S. monēbor	monēberis (-re)	monēbitur	
P. amābimur	amābimini	amābuntur		P. monēbimur	monēbimini	monēbuntur	
PERFECT				PERFECT			
<i>I have been loved,</i> <i>I was loved</i>		<i>I may have been loved</i>		<i>I have been advised,</i> <i>I was advised</i>		<i>I may have been advised</i>	
S. amātus sum	(-a, -um) es	amātus sim	(-a, -um) sis	S. monitus sum	(-a, -um) es	monitus sim	(-a, -um) sis
P. amāti sumus	(-ae, -a) estis	amāti sīmus	(-ae, -a) sītis	P. monitī sumus	(-ae, -a) estis	monitī sīmus	(-ae, -a) sītis
sunt		sint		sunt		sint	
PLUPERFECT				PLUPERFECT			
<i>I had been loved</i>		<i>I might (should) have been loved</i>		<i>I had been advised</i>		<i>I might (should) have been advised</i>	
S. amātus eram	(-a, -um) erās	amātus essem	(-a, -um) essēs	S. monitus eram	(-a, -um) erās	monitus essem	(-a, -um) essēs
P. amāti erāmus	(-ae, -a) erātis	amāti essēmus	(-ae, -a) essētis	P. monitī erāmus	(-ae, -a) erātis	monitī essēmus	(-ae, -a) essētis
erant		essent		erant		essent	

PASSIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

Regor, regī, rēctus sum

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Audior, audīrī, audītus sum

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
<i>I was ruled</i>	<i>I might be ruled</i>	<i>I was heard</i>	<i>I might be heard</i>
S. regēbar	regerer	S. audiēbar	audīrer
regēbāris (-re)	regerēris (-re)	audiēbāris (-re)	audirēris (-re)
regēbātur	regerētur	audiēbātur	audirētur
P. regēbāmur	regerēmur	P. audiēbāmur	audirēmur
regēbāminī	regerēminī	audiēbāminī	audirēminī
regēbantur	regerentur	audiēbantur	audirentur
FUTURE		FUTURE	
<i>I shall be ruled</i>		<i>I shall be heard</i>	
S. regar		S. audiar	
regēris (-re)		audiēris (-re)	
regētur		audiētur	
P. regēmur		P. audiēmur	
regēminī		audiēminī	
regentur		audientur	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
<i>I have been ruled,</i>	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>I have been heard,</i>	<i>I may have been</i>
<i>I was ruled</i>	<i>ruled</i>	<i>I was heard</i>	<i>heard</i>
S. rēctus sum	rēctus sim	S. audītus sum	audītus sim
(-a, -um)es	(-a, -um)sis	(-a, -um)es	(-a, -um)sis
est	sit	est	sit
P. rēctī sumus	rēctī simus	P. audītī sumus	audītī simus
(-ae, -a)estis	(-ae, -a)sitis	(-ae, -a)estis	(-ae, -a)sitis
sunt	sint	sunt	sint
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I had been ruled</i>	<i>I might (should)</i>	<i>I had been heard</i>	<i>I might (should)</i>
	<i>have been ruled</i>		<i>have been heard</i>
S. rēctus eram	rēctus essem	S. audītus eram	audītus essem
(-a, -um)erās	(-a, -um)essēs	(-a, -um)erās	(-a, -um)essēs
erat	esset	erat	esset
P. rēctī erāmus	rēctī essēmus	P. audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
(-ae, -a)erātis	(-ae, -a)essētis	(-ae, -a)erātis	(-ae, -a)essētis
erant	essent	erant	essent

PASSIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

Amor, amārī, amātus sum

SECOND CONJUGATION

Moneor, monērī, monitus sum

INDICATIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been loved

S. amātus (-a, -um) erō

eris

erit

P. amātī (-ae, -a) erimus

eritis

erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

S. 2. amā-re, *be thou loved*P. 2. amā-mini, *be ye loved*

FUTURE

S. 2. amā-tor, *thou shalt be loved*3. amā-tor, *he shall be loved*

P. 2. ——— ———

3. ama-ntor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

PRES. amārī, *to be loved*PERF. amātus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been loved*FUT. amātum iri, *to be about to be loved*

FUT. PERF. amātum (-am, -um) fore

GERUNDIVE

amandus, -a, -um, *to be (deserving to be) loved*

PARTICIPLE

PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having been loved*

INDICATIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been advised

S. monitus (-a, -um) erō

eris

erit

P. monitī (-ae, -a) erimus

eritis

erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

S. 2. monē-re, *be thou advised*P. 2. monē-mini, *be ye advised*

FUTURE

S. 2. monē-tor, *thou shalt be advised*3. monē-tor, *he shall be advised*

P. 2. ——— ———

3. mone-ntor, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

PRES. monērī, *to be advised*PERF. monitus (-a, -um) esse, *to have been advised*FUT. monitum iri, *to be about to be advised*

FUT. PERF. monitum (-am, -um) fore

GERUNDIVE

monendus, -a, -um, *to be (deserving to be) advised*

PARTICIPLE

PERF. monitus, -a, -um, *having been advised*

PASSIVE VOICE

THIRD CONJUGATION

Regor, regī, rēctus sum

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Audior, audīrī, audītus sum

INDICATIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been ruled

S. rēctus (-a, -um)	erō
	eris
	erit
P. rēctī (-ae, -a)	erimus
	eritis
	erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

S. 2. rege-re,	<i>be thou ruled</i>
P. 2. regi-mini,	<i>be ye ruled</i>

FUTURE

S. 2. regi-tor,	<i>thou shalt be ruled</i>
3. regi-tor,	<i>he shall be ruled</i>
P. 2. —	—
3. regu-ntor,	<i>they shall be ruled</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. regī,	<i>to be ruled</i>
PERF. rēctus (-a, -um) esse,	<i>to have been ruled</i>
FUT. rēctum irī,	<i>to be about to be ruled</i>
FUT. PERF. rēctum (-am, -um) fore	

GERUNDIVE

regendus, -a, -um, *to be (deserving to be) ruled*

PARTICIPLE

PERF. rēctus, -a -um, *having been ruled*

INDICATIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been heard

S. auditus (-a, -um)	erō
	eris
	erit
P. audītī (-ae, -a)	erimus
	eritis
	erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

S. 2. audi-re,	<i>be thou heard</i>
P. 2. audi-mini,	<i>be ye heard</i>

FUTURE

S. 2. audi-tor,	<i>thou shalt be heard</i>
3. audi-tor,	<i>he shall be heard</i>
P. 2. —	—
3. audiu-ntor,	<i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. audīrī,	<i>to be heard</i>
PERF. auditus (-a, -um) esse,	<i>to have been heard</i>
FUT. auditum irī,	<i>to be about to be heard</i>
FUT. PERF. auditum (-am, -um) fore	

GERUNDIVE

audiendus, -a, -um, *to be (deserving to be) heard*

PARTICIPLE

PERF. auditus, -a, -um, *having been heard*

DEPONENT VERBS

97. Deponent Verbs have five forms of the Active Voice: Fut. Infin., Pres. Partic., Fut. Partic., Gerund, and Supine. The Gerundive is always Passive in sense.

Indicative Mood

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION	FOURTH CONJUGATION
	<i>I admire</i>	<i>I fear</i>	<i>I perform</i>	<i>I divide</i>
<i>Present</i>	hortor	vereor	fungor	partior
<i>Imperf.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	fungēbar	partiebar
<i>Future</i>	hortābor	verēbor	fungar	partiar
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus sum	veritus sum	fūctus sum	partītus sum
<i>Pluperf.</i>	hortātus eram	veritus eram	fūctus eram	partītus eram
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	hortātus erō	veritus erō	fūctus erō	partītus erō

Subjunctive Mood

<i>Present</i>	horter	verear	fungar	partiar
<i>Imperf.</i>	hortārer	verērer	fungerer	partīrer
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	fūctus sim	partītus sim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	fūctus essem	partītus essem

Imperative Mood

<i>Present</i>	hortāre	verēre	fungere	partīre
<i>Future</i>	hortātor	verētor	fungitor	partītor

Infinitives

<i>Present</i>	hortārī	verērī	fungī	partīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	fūctus esse	partītus esse
<i>Future</i>	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	fūctūrus esse	partītūrus esse
<i>Fut. Pf.</i>	hortātum fore	veritum fore	fūctum fore	partītum fore

Participles

<i>Present</i>	hortāns	verēns	fungēns	partiēns
<i>Future</i>	hortātūrus	veritūrus	fūctūrus	partītūrus
<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus	veritus	fūctus	partītus

Gerund

hortandi	verendi	fungendi	partiendi
----------	---------	----------	-----------

Gerundive

hortandus	verendus	fungendus	partiendus
-----------	----------	-----------	------------

Supine

hortātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	fūctum, -tū	partitum, -tū
---------------	--------------	-------------	---------------

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

98. 1. The First, or Active Periphrastic Conjugation, is formed by uniting the Future Active Participle with some tense of *esse*.

Pres. *amātūrus sum*, *I am about to love*; Subj. *amātūrus sim*; Impf. *amātūrus eram*, *I was about to love*; Subj. *amātūrus essem*; Fut. *amātūrus erō*; Pf. *amātūrus fui*.

NOTE. — The Future Active Participle with the Subjunctive of *esse* is often used for the missing Future of the Subjunctive.

2. The Second, or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, is formed by uniting the Gerundive with some tense of *esse*.

Pres. *amandus sum*, *I must be, ought to be, should be, loved*; Subj. *amandus sim*; Impf. *amandus eram*; Subj. *amandus essem*; Fut. *amandus erō*; Pf. *amandus fui*.

VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

99. The following verbs of the Third Conjugation strengthen the stem in the Present by inserting an -i: *capiō*, to take; *cupiō*, to desire; *faciō*, to make; *fugiō*, to flee; *fodiō*, to dig; *gradior*, to walk; *iaciō*, to throw; *laciō*, to lure (in its compounds); *morior*, to die; *patior*, to suffer; *pariō*, to bear; *quatiō*, to shake; *rapiō*, to seize; *sapiō*, to taste of; and *speciō*, to see (in its compounds).

This *i* is dropped before *æ* and *i*, except before *-et*, *-ent*, and *-end*. Thus, *capiō*, *capis*, *capit*, *capimus*, *capitis*, *capunt*; *capiar*; *capiēbam*; *capiēns*; *capendus*; but *caperem*; *caperer*.

PECULIAR FORMS

100. 1. Perfects in *-āvī* and *-ēvī* may drop *v* between two vowels before *s* or *r* and contract; those in *-ivī* drop *v* before *r* or *s*, but contract only before *s*; thus *amāvistī* becomes *amāstī*; *dēlēvissem*, *dēlēsssem*; *amāveram*, *amāram*; *dēlēveram*, *dēlēram*; *quaesivisse*, *quaesisse*; but *audīveram*, *audieram*.

2. In *petere*, *dēsinere*, and compounds of *īre*, in the Perfects, *v* is dropped in the first and third persons singular, and in the first person plural, but no contraction occurs: *rediī*, *rediit*, *rediimus*.

3. The third plural Perfect Indicative, uncontracted form, often ends in *-ēre* for *-ērunt*: as *amāvēre* for *amāvērunt*.

4. The second singular Passive often has *-re* for *-ris*, but rarely in the Present Indicative, except in Deponents: *abūtēre* for *abūtēris*.

5. The Future Active Participle is usually formed on the Participial Stem. The following Future Participles are exceptions:—

Verb	Participial Stem	Future Participle
<i>fruor</i> , to enjoy	<i>frūct-</i>	<i>fruitūrus</i>
<i>iuvō</i> , to aid	<i>iūt-</i>	<i>iuvātūrus</i> (<i>but adiūtūrus</i>)
<i>lavō</i> , to bathe	<i>laut- or lōt-</i>	<i>lavātūrus</i>
<i>morior</i> , to die	<i>mortu-</i>	<i>moritūrus</i>
<i>orior</i> , to rise	<i>ort-</i>	<i>oritūrus</i>
<i>pariō</i> , to bear	<i>part-</i>	<i>paritūrus</i>
<i>ruō</i> , to rush	<i>rut-</i>	<i>ruitūrus</i>
<i>secō</i> , to cut	<i>sect-</i>	<i>secātūrus</i>
<i>sonō</i> , to sound	<i>sonit-</i>	<i>sonātūrus</i>

6. *dīcere, dūcere, facere*, and *ferre* have the Imperatives *dīc, dūc, fac, fer*. In prepositional compounds of *faciō*, and with *re-*, the *a* becomes *i*: as *cōnficere, reficere*. Here the Imperative ends in *-fice*: as *cōnfice*. Compounds of *dīcere* and *dūcere* accent the ultima: as *ēdīc, ēdūc*.

ANCIENT AND POETICAL FORMS (OCCASIONALLY FOUND)

101. 1. The Present Subjunctive Active ends in *-im* instead of *-am, -em*: thus *perduim* for *perdam*; *duim* for *dem*.

2. In verbs of the Fourth Conjugation the *e* of the Imperfect Indicative is dropped: as *lēnībam* = *lēniēbam*.

3. The Perfect Subjunctive and Future Perfect Indicative Active in the First Conjugation have *-assim* and *-assō* for *-āverim* and *-āverō* (*levassō* = *levāverō*, *imperassim* = *imperāverim*); in the Second, *-essim* and *-essō* for *-uerim* and *-uerō* (*habessim* = *habuerim*, *habessō* = *habuerō*); in the Third, *-sim* and *-sō* for *-erim* and *-erō* (*faxim* = *fēcerim*, *faxō* = *fēcerō*).

4. In the Perfect of the Third Conjugation, *-is* is dropped after *s* and *x*: as *dīxtī* = *dīxistī*.

5. The Present Infinitive Passive adds *-er*: *dīcier* = *dīcī*.

6. The Gerundives of the Third and Fourth Conjugations have *-undus* for *-endus*: *faciundus* = *faciendus*, *potiundus* = *potiendus*.

FORMATION OF STEMS

Present Stem

102. 1. In the Vowel Conjugations the Present Stem is usually the same as the Verb-Stem: thus *amā-, dēlē-, audī-*.

2. But many verbs of the Vowel Conjugations have a consonant Verb-Stem:—

	Verb Stem	Present Stem
iuvāre	iuv-	iuvā(-)
vidēre	vid-	vidē(-)
venīre	ven-	venī(-)

103. In the Consonant (Third) Conjugation the Present Stem is rarely the same as the Verb-Stem; usually, to form the Present Stem, the Verb-Stem is strengthened:

1. By adding *i*: as **cap-i-ō** (Verb-Stem **cap-**).
2. By inserting *m* or *n*: as **cum-b-ō**, **vin-c-ō** (Verb-Stems **cub-**, **vic-**).
3. By adding *n*, *t*, *sc*: as **cer-n-ō**, **flec-t-ō**, **nō-sc-ō** (Verb-Stems **cer-**, **flec-**, **nō-**).
4. By Reduplication, repeating the initial consonant of the stem with *i*: **gī-gn-ō** (**gi-gen-ō**, Verb-Stem **gen-**); **si-st-ō** (Verb-Stem **sta-**).

Perfect Stem

104. The Perfect Stem is formed from the Verb-Stem:

1. By lengthening a short stem-vowel: **emere**, Pf. **ēmī**; **legere**, Pf. **lēgī**; *ā* becomes *ē*: **agere**, **ēgī**.
2. By adding *s* (usually only with a long stem-syllable): **dīcere**, Pf. **dīxī**. But stems in **-nd** and reduplicated Perfects (**cecīdī**) take **-ī**.
3. By adding *v* in vowel-stems: **amāre**, Pf. **amāvī**; **dēlāre**, Pf. **dēlēvī**.

NOTE. — Those stems in *a* and *e* which lose their vowels, and a few others, change *v* to *u*: **domāre**, Pf. **domuī**; **docēre**, Pf. **docuī**.

4. By Reduplication; that is, placing the initial consonant and the following vowel (or *e*) before the Verb-Stem: **poscere**, Pf. **poposcī**; **cadere**, Pf. **cecīdī**.

NOTES. — 1. **Spondēre, stāre, sistere** reduplicate with both initial consonants, but lose the **s** of the Verb-Stem: **spo-pondī, ste-tī, sti-tī**.

2. As a rule, compounds do not reduplicate, except the compounds of **dare, stāre, sistere, discere, poscere**: thus **circumdedī, adstitī, addidicī, dēpoposcī**.

The compounds of **currō** vary: thus **dēcucurrī** or **dēcurrī**

Participial Stem

105. This stem is found in the Perfect Passive Participle, the Future Active Participle, and the Supine.

The Participial Stem is formed from the Verb-Stem: —

1. By adding **-tu-**: **amā-tu-s, dēlē-tū-rus, audī-tu-m**.

NOTE. — Stems in **a** and **e** that lose their vowel insert **i**: **domāre, domitus**; **monēre, monitus**. But **docēre, doctus**; **secāre, sectus**.

2. By adding **-su-**: **pellere, pul-su-s**.

EUPHONIC CHANGES IN FORMING THE PARTICIPIAL STEM

106. 1. Before **s** or **t**, **b** becomes **p**: **scribere, scriptus**.

2. Before **t**, the letters **g, h, q, v** become **c**; with **s** they form **x**: **legō, lēctus**; **trahō, tractus**; **relinquō, relictus**; **vīvō, victus**; **figō, fixus**.

3. Before **s**, the letters **d** and **t** either disappear or are assimilated: **claudere, clausus**; **mittere, missus**.

4. Between **m** followed by **s** or **t**, a **p**-sound arises in the pronunciation, and this generally appears in writing: **dēmō, dēmpsī, dēmptus**.

5. When a stem ends in two consonants, the second is dropped before **s** or **t**: **mulceō, mulsus**; **torqueō, tortus**.

6. **v** preceded by a consonant becomes **ū** before **-tus**; if preceded by **a, o, u**, it becomes **au, ō, ū**: **solūtus** from **solvō**, **fautus** from **faveō**, **mōtus** from **moveō**, **iūtus** from **iuvō**.

LIST OF MOST IMPORTANT VERBS, WITH STEM-FORMS

First Conjugation (Infinitive *-āre*)

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

107. 1.
- dō, dare, dedī, datus, to give.*

The *a* of the stem is short except in *dās, dā*.

Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions and prefixes are of the Third Conjugation: *abdō, abdere.*

circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus, to put around.

- 2.
- stō, stāre, stetī, status, to stand; Fut. Part. stātūrus.*

The compounds usually have no Past Participle.

Compounds with dissyllabic prepositions have *-stetī* in the Perfect; those with monosyllabic prepositions or *re-* have *-stitī*: thus *circumstetī, cōnstitī*.

Some have a Future Active Participle: *īnstātūrus, praestātūrus.*

distō and *exstō* have neither Perfect nor Supine.

II. PERFECT IN *-ī* WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

108. 1.
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, to help; Fut. Part. iuvātūrus.*

- 2.
- lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus (lōtus), to wash; Sup. lavātum (lautum).*

III. PERFECT IN *-vī* AND *-uī*

109. 1.
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus, to love.*

This is the type of all regular verbs of the First Conjugation.

- 2.
- crepō, crepāre, crepuī, crepitus, to rattle.*

- 3.
- cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum, to lie down.*

Compounds that insert *m* in the present stem are of the Third Conjugation: as *incumbō*, 120. 5.

4. domō, domāre, domuī, domitus, *to conquer*.
5. (From necō) ēnecō, ēnecāre, (ēnecūī), ēnectus, *to destroy*.
6. fricō, fricāre, fricuī, frictus and fricātus, *to rub*.
7. micō, micāre, micuī, —, *to glitter*; also ēmicuī; but dīmicāvī.
8. pōtō, pōtāre, pōtāvī, pōtus, *to drink*. The Participle pōtus is used both actively and passively.
9. plicō (found only in compounds) has -āvī and -uī in the Perfect and -ātus and -itus in the Participle, as in implicō.
In Cicero, explicō and applicō always have -āvī, -ātus.
10. secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, *to cut*; Fut. Part. secātūrus.
11. sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitus, *to sound*; Fut. Part. sonātūrus.
12. tonō, tonāre, tonuī, —, *to thunder*.
13. vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *to forbid*.

Second Conjugation (Infinitive -ēre)

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

110. (Infinitives are omitted in the list; all are in -ēre.)
 1. mordeō, momordī, morsus, *to bite*.
 2. pendeō, pependī, —, *to hang* (intrans.).
impendeō and dēpendeō lack the Perfect and Supine.
 3. spondeō, spopondī, spōnsus, *to promise*.
respondeō has Perfect respondī.
 4. tondeō, totondī, tōnsus, *to shear*.

II. PERFECT IN -ī WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

111. 1. caveō, cāvī, cautus, *to beware*.
2. faveō, fāvī, fautūrus, *to favor*.

3. foveō, fōvī, fōtus, *to cherish.*
4. moveō, mōvī, mōtus, *to move.*
5. paveō, pāvī, —, *to fear.*
6. sedeō, sēdī, sessus, *to sit.*

Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change *e* into *i* in present stem: adsideō, Pf. adsēdī. Dissideō, praesideō, and resideō have no Past Participle. For cōnsīdō, see 121. 31.

7. videō, vīdī, vīsus, *to see.*
8. voveō, vōvī, vōtus, *to vow.*

STEM-VOWEL NOT LENGTHENED

9. ferveō, fervī (ferbuī), —, *to boil.*
10. prandeō, prandī, prānsus, *to lunch.*

III. PERFECT IN -sī (-xī)

112. 1. ārdeō, ārsī, ārsus, *to burn* (intrans.).
2. algeō, alsī, —, *to be cold.*
3. augeō, auxī, auctus, *to increase* (generally trans.).
4. fulgeō, fulsī, —, *to shine.*
5. haereō, haesī, haesūrus, *to stick.*
6. iubeō, iussī, iūssus, *to command.*
7. indulgeō, indulsī, —, *to indulge.*
8. lūceō, lūxī, —, *to be light.*
9. lūgeō, lūxī, —, *to mourn.*
10. maneō, mānsī, mānsūrus, *to stay.*
11. mulceō, mulsī, mulsus, *to fondle*; also permulceō.
12. rīdeō, rīsī, rīsus, *to laugh.*
13. suādeō, suāsī, suāsus, *to advise*; also dissuādeō, persuādeō.
14. tergeō, tersī, tersus, *to wipe*; also abstergeō.
15. torqueō, torsī, tortus, *to twist.*
16. urgeō, ursī, —, *to urge.*

IV. PERFECT IN *-vī*

113. 1. *aboleō, abolēvī, abolitus, to destroy.*
 2. *cieō, cīvī, citus, to arouse.*
 Compounds are of the Fourth Conjugation.
 3. *dēleō, dēlēvī, dēlētus, to destroy.*
 4. *fleō, flēvī, flētus, to weep.*
 5. *pleō, plēvī, plētus, to fill; found only in compounds.*

V. PERFECT IN *-uī*

114. 1. *arceō, arcuī, —, to keep off (trans.).*
coerceō, coercuī, coercitus, to encompass.
exerceō, exercuī, exercitus, to drill.
 2. *caleō, caluī, calitūrus, to be warm.*
 3. *careō, caruī, caritūrus, to lack.*
 4. *cēnseō, cēnsuī, cēnsus, to be of opinion.*
 5. *doceō, docuī, doctus, to teach.*
 6. *doleō, doluī, dolitūrus, to be in pain.*
 7. *habeō, habuī, habitus, to have.*
 Compounds as *adhibeō, adhibuī, adhibitus, to bring to.*
 8. *iaceō, iacuī, iacitūrus, to lie prostrate.*
 9. *mereō, meruī, meritus, to deserve.*
 10. *misceō, miscuī, mīxtus, to mix.*
 11. *moneō, monuī, monitus, to advise; also admoneō.*
 12. *noceō, nocuī, nocitūrus, to hurt.*
 13. *pāreō, pāruī, pāritūrus, to appear, obey.*
 14. *placeō, placuī or placitus sum, placitus, to please.*
displaceō, displicuī, displicitus, to displease.
 15. *taceō, tacuī, tacitus, to be silent.*
 16. *teneō, tenuī, —, to hold.*
 Compounds as *contineō, continuī, contentus, to contain.*

17. terreō, terruī, territus, *to frighten*.
 18. torreō, torruī, tostus, *to parch*.
 19. valeō, valuī, valitūrus, *to be strong*.

WITHOUT PARTICIPIAL STEM

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 20. egeō and indigeō, <i>to want</i> . | 27. palleō, <i>to be pale</i> . |
| 21. ēmineō, <i>to stand forth</i> . | 28. pateō, <i>to lie open</i> . |
| 22. flōreō, <i>to bloom</i> . | 29. sileō, <i>to be silent</i> . |
| 23. horreō, <i>to bristle</i> . | 30. studeō, <i>to desire</i> . |
| 24. lateō, <i>to lie hid</i> . | 31. stupeō, <i>to be amazed</i> . |
| 25. niteō, <i>to gleam</i> . | 32. timeō, <i>to fear</i> . |
| 26. oleō, <i>to smell</i> . | 33. vigeō, <i>to flourish</i> . |

VI. IN THE PRESENT SYSTEM ONLY

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 115. 1. aveō, <i>to desire</i> . | 4. maereō, <i>to mourn</i> . |
| 2. frīgeō, <i>to be cold</i> . | 5. polleō, <i>to be strong</i> . |
| 3. immineō, <i>to overhang</i> . | |

Third Conjugation (Infinitive -ere)

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

116. 1. cadō, cecidī, cāsūrus, *to fall*.
 Compounds as concidō, concidī, —, *to fall*.
 The Participial Stem is found in
 occidō, occidī, occāsus, *to fall*.
 recidō, recidī, recāsus, *to fall back*.
 2. caedō, cecidī, caesus, *to cut*.
 Compounds as occidō, occidī, occīsus, *to kill*.
 3. canō, cecinī (Participle supplied from cantō), *to sing*.
 Compounds have the Perfect in -uī.
 4. crēdō, crēdidī, crēditus, *to trust*.
 5. currō, cucurrī, cursus, *to run*.
 Compounds have -currī or -cucurrī in the Perfect.

6. discō, didicī, —, *to learn.*
7. Compounds of dō with monosyllabic prepositions and prefixes, *e.g.* reddō, *to give back*, as
ēdō, ēdidī, ēditus, *to give out.*
perdō, perdidī, perditus, *to destroy.*
8. fallō, fefellī (falsus, only as adj.), *to deceive.*
refellō, refellī, —, *to refute.*
9. parcō, pepercī (parsī), parsus, *to spare.*
10. pellō, pepulī, pulsus, *to drive.*
11. pendō, pependī, pēnsus, *to weigh.*
12. poscō, poposcī, —, *to demand.*
Compounds as dēposcō, dēpoposcī, *to demand.*
13. pungō, pupugī, pūctus, *to prick.*
The compounds have punxī in the Perfect.
14. sistō, stitī, status, *to cause to stand.*
Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions as
cōnsistō, cōnstitī, cōnstitus, *to stop* (intrans.).
circumsistō, circumstetī (stitī), —, *to stand around.*
15. tangō, tetigī, tāctus, *to touch.*
Compounds as attingō, attigī, attāctus, *to touch.*
16. tendō, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus, *to stretch.*
17. tundō, tutudī, tūnsus or tūsus, *to beat.*
18. vëndō, vëndidī, vënditus, *to sell.*

WITH LOST REDUPLICATION

19. (From cellō) percellō, perculī, perculsus, *to strike down.*
20. findō, fidī, fissus, *to split.*
21. scindō, scidī, scissus, *to tear apart.*
22. tollō, sustulī, sublātus, *to remove.*
(For the Perf. of sufferō, *to undergo*, sustinuī is sometimes used.)

II. PERFECT IN *-ī* WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

117. 1. *agō, ēgī, āctus, to drive.*
abigō, abēgī, abāctus, to drive away.
cōgō, coēgī, coāctus, to collect.
dēgō, dēgī, —, to pass time.
peragō, perēgī, perāctus, to finish.
subigō, subēgī, subāctus, to subdue.
2. *edō, ēdī, ēsus, to eat.*
comedō, comēdī, comēsus or comēstus, to devour.
3. *emō, ēmī, ēmptus, to buy.*
coēmō, coēmī, coēmptus, to buy up.
cōmō, cōmpsī, cōmptus, to deck.
dēmō, dēmpsī, dēmptus, to take off.
prēmō, prēmpsī, prēmptus, to bring out.
sūmō, sūmpsī, sūmptus, to take up.
 Other compounds as
adimō, adēmī, adēmptus, to take away.
4. *frangō, frēgī, frāctus, to break.*
 Compounds as *cōnfringō, cōnfrēgī, cōnfrāctus, to break.*
5. *fundō, fūdī, fūsus, to pour.*
6. *legō, lēgī, lēctus, to gather, to read.*
 Compounds as *dēligō, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, to select.*
 (But *diligō, dīlēxī, dīlēctus, to love.*)
intellegō, intellēxī, intellēctus, to understand.
neglegō, neglēxī, neglēctus, to slight.
 The *e* remains in *intellegō, perlegō, and relegō.*
7. *linquō, liquī, —, to leave.*
 Compounds as *relinquō, relīquī, relīctus, to leave.*
8. *pangō, pēgī (pepigī), pāctus, to fasten.*
 Compounds as *compingō, compēgī, compāctus, to unite.*

9. rumpō, rūpī, ruptus, *to break*.
10. vincō, vīcī, vīctus, *to conquer*.

III. PERFECT IN -sī (-xī)

118. 1. carpō, carpsī, carptus, *to pluck*.
Compounds as dēcerpō, dēcerpsī, dēcerptus, *to pluck off*.
2. cēdō, cessī, cessus, *to yield*.
3. cingō, cinxī, cinctus, *to gird*.
4. claudō, clausī, clausus, *to shut*.
Compounds as conclūdō, conclūsī, conclūsus, *to confine*.
5. coquō, cōxī, coctus, *to cook*.
6. dīcō, dīxī, dictus, *to say*.
7. For dīligō, intellegō, neglegō, see 117. 6.
8. dīvidō, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *to divide*.
9. dūcō, dūxī, ductus, *to lead*.
10. emō: see 117. 3.
11. fīgō, fīxī, fīxus, *to fix*.
12. fingō, finxī, fīctus, *to form*.
13. flectō, flēxī, flexus, *to bend*.
14. Compounds of flīgō as adflīgō, adflīxī, adflīctus, *to shatter*.
15. fluō, flūxī, fluxus, *to flow*.
16. gerō, gessī, gestus, *to carry*.
17. iungō, iūnxī, iūctus, *to join*.
18. laedō, laesī, laesus, *to hurt*.
Compounds as conlīdō, conlīsī, conlīsus, *to clash*.
19. lūdō, lūsī, lūsus, *to play*.
20. mergō, mersī, mersus, *to sink*.
21. mittō, mīsī, missus, *to send*.
22. nectō, nexuī (nexī), nexus, *to bind*.

23. nūbō, nūpsī, nūpta (fem. only), *to marry*.
 24. pingō, pinxī, pīctus, *to paint*.
 25. plangō, planxī, planctus, *to beat*.
 26. plaudō, plausī, plausus, *to clap*.
 Compounds as explōdō, explōsī, explōsus, *to hiss off*.
 27. premō, pressī, pressus, *to press*.
 Compounds as comprimō, compressī, compressus, *to restrain*.
 28. (From pungō) compungō, compunxī, compunctus, *to sting*.
 29. rādō, rāsī, rāsus, *to scrape*.
 30. regō, rēxī, rēctus, *to rule* (trans.).
 Compounds as corrigō, corrēxī, corrēctus, *to correct*.
 pergō, perrēxī, perrēctus, *to continue*.
 surgō, surrēxī, surrēctus, *to rise*.
 31. rēpō, rēpsī, rēptus, *to creep*.
 32. rōdō, rōsī, rōsus, *to gnaw*.
 33. scalpō, scalpsī, scalptus, *to carve*.
 34. scrībō, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write*.
 35. sculpō, sculpsī, sculptus, *to carve*.
 36. serpō, serpsī, serptus, *to crawl*.
 37. spargō, sparsī, sparsus, *to scatter*.
 Compounds as aspergō, aspersī, aspersus, *to sprinkle*.
 38. (From stinguō) distinguō, distinxī, distinctus, *to distinguish*.
 Also exstinguō and restinguō.
 39. stringō, strinxī, strictus, *to bind*.
 40. struō, strūxī, strūctus, *to heap*.
 41. sūgō, sūxī, —, *to suck*.
 42. tegō, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover*.
 43. (From temnō) contemnō, contempsī, contemptus, *to despise*.
 44. tingō, tinxī, tīctus, *to dip*.

45. trahō, trāxī, tractus, *to draw*.
46. trūdō, trūsī, trūsus, *to thrust*.
47. ung(u)ō, unxī, ūctus, *to anoint*.
48. ūrō, ussī, ūstus, *to burn* (trans.).
49. vādō in compounds: ēvādō, ēvāsī, ēvāsus, *to go out*.
50. vehō, vēxī, vēctus, *to carry*.
51. vīvō, vixī, vīctus, *to live*.

IV. PERFECT IN *-vī* PRECEDED BY A LONG
VOWEL

119. 1. cernō, crēvī, (certus), *to distinguish*.
In the compounds, the Part. has the form crētus, as
dēcernō, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus.
2. linō, lēvī, litus, *to besmear*.
Compounds as oblinō, oblēvī, oblitus, *to besmear*.
3. petō, petīvī or petiī, petītus, *to seek*.
Compounds as appetō, appetīvī, appetītus, *to long for*.
4. quaerō, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *to seek*.
Compounds as conquīrō, conquīsīvī, conquīsītus, *to seek out*.
5. serō, sēvī, satus, *to sow*.
Compounds as cōnserō, cōnsēvī, cōnsitus, *to plant*.
6. sinō, sīvī, situs, *to permit*.
dēsīnō, desiī (rare ; dēstitī is regularly used instead),
dēsītus, *to cease*.
7. spernō, sprēvī, sprētus, *to despise*.
8. sternō, strāvī, strātus, *to spread*.
Compounds as prōsternō, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus, *to overthrow*.
9. terō, trīvī, trītus, *to rub*.
10. arcessō, arcessīvī, arcessītus, *to send for*.

11. capessō, capessivī, capessitūrus, *to seize.*
12. incessō, incessivī, —, *to assault.*
13. laccessō, laccessivī, laccessitus, *to provoke.*

VERBS IN -scō

14. adolēscō, adolēvī, adultus, *to grow up.*
15. crēscō, crēvī, crētus, *to grow.*
16. nōscō, nōvī, nōtus, *to know.*
 āgnōscō, āgnōvī, āgnitus, *to recognize.*
 cōgnōscō, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *to find out.*
 īgnōscō, īgnōvī, īgnōtus, *to pardon.*
17. obsolēscō, obsolēvī, obsolētus, *to grow old.*
18. pāscō, pāvī, pāstus, *to feed.*
19. quīescō, quīēvī, quīētus, *to rest.*
20. scīscō, scīvī, scītus, *to enact.*
21. suēscō, suēvī, suētus, *to become accustomed.*

V. PERFECT IN -uī

120. 1. alō, aluī, alitus (altus), *to nourish.*
2. ārēscō, āruī, —, *to dry up.*
3. Compounds of canō as
 praecinō, praecinuī, —, *to make music before.*
4. colō, coluī, cultus, *to cultivate.*
 excolō, excoluī, excultus, *to perfect.*
 incolō, incoluī, —, *to inhabit.*
5. Compounds of the obsolete cumbō: —
 accumbō, accubuī, accubitus, *to lie near.*
 incumbō, incubuī, incubitus, *to lean on.*
 occumbō, occubuī, occubitus, *to sink.*
 prōcumbō, prōcubuī, prōcubitus, *to bend down.*
 recumbō, recubuī, —, *to recline.*
 succumbō, succubuī, —, *to surrender.*
6. compēscō, compēscuī, —, *to check.*

7. cōnsenēscō, cōnsenuī, —, *to grow old.*
8. cōnsulō, cōnsulūī, cōnsultum, *to consult.*
9. Compounds of serō as
cōnserō, cōnseruī, cōnserutus, *to join*; also dēserō,
disserō, īnserō, and interserō.
10. fremō, fremuī, —, *to snort.*
11. gemō, gemuī, —, *to groan.*
12. gignō, genuī, genitus, *to produce.*
13. metō, messuī, messus, *to mow.*
14. molō, moluī, molitus, *to grind.*
15. occulō, occuluī, occultus, *to hide.*
16. pōnō, posuī, positus, *to place.*
17. strepō, strepuī, —, *to resound.*
18. texō, texuī, textus, *to join.*
19. tremō, tremuī, —, *to tremble.*
20. vomō, vomuī, vomitus, *to vomit.*

VI. PERFECT IN *-ī*, BUT WITH SAME STEM AS PRESENT
STEM

121. 1. abnuō, abnuī, abnuitūrus, *to refuse*; also adnuō,
adnuī, —, *to assent.*
2. acuō, acuī, acūtus, *to sharpen.*
3. arguō, arguī, argūtus, *to prove.*
4. Compounds of candeō as
accendō, accendī, accēnsus, *to kindle.*
5. congruō, congruī, *to agree.*
6. dēfendō, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *to defend.*
7. exuō, exuī, exūtus, *to take off.*
8. excūdō, excūdī, excūsus, *to hammer.*
9. facessō, facessī, facessitus, *to accomplish.*
10. īcō, īcī, ictus, *to strike.*
11. imbuō, imbuī, imbūtus, *to steep.*
12. induō, induī, indūtus, *to put on.*

13. *luō, luī, —, to pay off.*
Compounds as *dīluō, dīluī, dīlūtus, to wash away.*
14. *mandō, mandī, mānsus, to chew.*
15. *metuō, metuī, —, to fear.*
16. *minuō, minuī, minūtus, to lessen.*
17. *offendō, offendī, offēnsus, to hit upon.*
18. *pandō, pandī, passus, to spread open.*
19. *prehendō, prehendi, prehēnsus* } , *to seize.*
prendō, prendī, prēnsus
20. *ruō, ruī, rutus, ruitūrus, to tumble down.*
21. Compounds of *scandō* as
ascendō, ascendī, ascēnsus, to climb up.
22. *solvō, solvī, solūtus, to loose.*
23. *statuō, statuī, statūtus.*
Compounds as *cōstituō, cōstituī, cōstitutus, to settle.*
24. *suō, suī, sūtus, to stitch.*
25. *tribuō, tribuī, tribūtus, to allot.*
26. (From *vellō*) *ēvellō, ēvelli, ēvulsus, to pluck out.*
27. (From *verrō*) *ēverrō, ēverri, ēversus, to sweep out.*
28. *vertō, vertī, versus, to turn.*
29. *vīsō, vīsī, vīsus, to visit.*
30. *volvō, volvī, volūtus, to roll.*

CHANGE OF *i* OF THE STEM TO *ē*

31. *cōnsīdō, cōnsēdī, to take one's seat.*
32. *possīdō, possēdī, possessus, to take possession.*

Present Stem ending in *-i* in the Third Conjugation

I. REDUPLICATED PERFECT

122. *pariō, peperī, partus, to bring forth.*
Compounds are of the Fourth Conjugation.

II. PERFECT WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

123. 1. capiō, cēpī, captus, *to take*.
Compounds as accipiō, accēpī, acceptus, *to receive*.
2. faciō, fēcī, factus, *to make*.
Compounds with prepositions as adficiō, adfēcī, adfectus, *to treat*.
Other compounds as satisfaciō, satisfēcī, satisfactus, *to satisfy*.
Compounds of faciō that change a to i form the passive from the same stem as the active; others use fīō:
adsuēficiō, adsuēfēcī, adsuēfactus, *to accustom*. Passive, adsuēfīō, adsuēfierī.
3. fodiō, fōdī, fossus, *to dig*.
4. fugiō, fūgī, fugitūrus, *to flee*.
5. iaciō, iēcī, iactus, *to throw*.
Compounds as coniciō, coniēcī, coniectus, *to gather*.

III. PERFECT IN -ssī, -xī

124. 1. (From laciō), adliciō, adlēcī, adlectus, *to attract*.
inliciō, inlēcī, inlectus, *to entice*.
pelliciō, pellēcī, pellectus, *to entice*.
But ēliciō, ēlicuī, ēlicitus, *to entice*.
2. speciō in compounds as aspiciō, aspēcī, aspectus, *to look at*.
3. Compounds of quatiō as
concutiō, concussī, concussus, *to agitate*.

IV. PERFECT IN -vī PRECEDED BY A LONG VOWEL

125. 1. cupiō, cupīvī, cupītus, *to desire*.
2. sapiō, sapīvī, —, *to taste of*.

V. PERFECT IN *-uī*

126. 1. (From *laciō*) *ēliciō*, *ēlicuī*, *ēlicitus*, *to draw out*.
 2. *rapiō*, *rapuī*, *raptus*, *to seize*.
 Compounds as *abripiō*, *abripuī*, *abreptus*, *to carry off*.

VI. FOUND IN PRESENT SYSTEM ONLY

127. 1. *angō*, *to throttle*.
 2. *vergō*, *to be situated*, and some others.

Fourth Conjugation (Infinitive in *-īre*)

I. PERFECT WITH LOST REDUPLICATION

128. 1. *comperiō*, *comperī*, *compertus*, *to learn*.
 2. *reperiō*, *repperī*, *repertus*, *to find*.

II. PERFECT IN *-ī* WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL

129. *veniō*, *vēnī*, *ventus*, *to come*.

III. PERFECT IN *-sī*, *-xī*

130. 1. *farcīō*, *farsī*, *fartus*, *to stuff*.
referciō, *refersī*, *refertus*, *to stuff full*.
cōnferciō, (*differciō*), *efferciō*, and *īnferciō* have 1. Perfect.
 2. *fulciō*, *fulsī*, *fultus*, *to prop*.
 3. *hauriō*, *hausī*, *haustus*, *to drain*.
 4. *saepiō*, *saepsī*, *saeptus*, *to hedge in*.
 5. *sentiō*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, *to perceive*.
 6. *sarciō*, *sarsī*, *sartus*, *to patch*.
 7. *sanciō*, *sānxī*, *sānctus*, *to ratify*.
 8. *vinciō*, *vinxī*, *vinctus*, *to bind*.

IV. PERFECT IN *-ivī*

131. 1. audiō, audīvī, audītus, *to hear*; and all regular verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.
 2. sepeliō, sepelīvī, sepultus, *to bury*.

V. PERFECT IN *-uī*

132. 1. aperiō, aperuī, apertus, *to open*.
 2. operiō, operuī, opertus, *to cover*.
 3. saliō, saluī, —, *to leap*.
 Compounds as īnsiliō, īnsiluī, —, *to leap in*.

VI. FOUND IN PRESENT SYSTEM ONLY

133. 1. feriō, *to strike*.
 2. ēsuriō, *to be hungry*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

DEPONENT VERBS

First Conjugation

134. All are regular, like hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *to encourage*.

Second Conjugation

135. Type: vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *to fear*.
 The exceptions are: —
 1. reor, rērī, ratus sum, *to think*. (Has no Pres. Act. Part.)
 2. fateor, fatērī, fassus sum, *to acknowledge*.
 Compounds as cōnfiteor, cōnfītērī, cōnfessus sum, *to confess*.

Third Conjugation

136. 1. fruor, fruī, fructus sum, fruitūrus, *to enjoy*.
 perfruor, perfruī, perfructus sum, *to enjoy hugely*.
 2. fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, *to perform*.
 3. loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *to speak*.
 4. queror, querī, questus sum, *to complain*.
 5. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *to follow*.
 6. amplexor, amplexī, amplexus sum, *to embrace*.
 7. lābor, lābī, lapsus sum, *to slip*.
 8. nītor, nītī, { nīxus sum, lit., *to lean upon*.
 { nīsus sum, fig., *to strive*.
 9. ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *to use*.
 10. morior, morī, mortuus sum, moritūrus, *to die*.
 11. gradior, gradi, gressus sum, *to step*.
 Compounds as aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum, *to attack*.
 12. patior, patī, passus sum, *to suffer*.
 perpetior, perpetī, perpessus sum, *to endure*.

VERBS IN -*scor*

13. adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum, *to obtain*.
 14. comminīscor, comminīscī, commentus sum, *to devise*.
 15. expergīscor, expergīscī, experrēctus sum, *to awake*.
 16. irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum, *to be angry*.
 17. nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus or nactus sum, *to obtain*.
 18. nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *to be born*.
 19. oblivīscor, oblivīscī, oblītus sum, *to forget*.
 20. pacīscor, pacīscī, pactus sum, *to bargain*.
 21. proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *to set out*.
 22. ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *to avenge*.
 23. vescor, vescī, —, *to feed upon*.
 24. dēfetīscor, dēfetīscī, dēfessus sum, *to grow weary*.

Fourth Conjugation

137. Type : *partior, partīrī, partītus sum, to divide.*

The exceptions are :

1. *adsentior, adsentīrī, adsēnsus sum, to assent.*
2. *experior, experīrī, expertus sum, to try.*
opperior, opperīrī, oppertus sum, to wait.
3. *ōrdior, ōrdīrī, ōrsus sum, to begin.*
4. *orior, orīrī, ortus sum, to arise.*
5. *mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, to measure.*

NOTE.—Orior and its compounds have Pres. Ind. *oreris, oritur, orimur*; Impf. Subj. *orerētur, orerentur*; Imper. *orere*.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Possum, posse, potuī, to be able

138. **Possum** is compounded of **potis, able, and sum, I am**; thus **pot-sum** becomes **possum**, **pot-esse** becomes **posse**, and **pot-fuī, potuī**.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	<i>Present</i>	
possum		possim
potes		possis
potest		possit
possumus		possimus
potestis		possitis
possunt		possint
	<i>Imperfect</i>	
poteram		possem
	<i>Future</i>	
poterō		
	<i>Perfect</i>	
potuī		potuerim
	<i>Pluperfect</i>	
potueram		potuissem
	<i>Future Perfect</i>	
potuerō		

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Present</i>
posse	potuisse	potēns (used only as an adjective)

139. Edō, edere and ēsse, ēsus, to eat

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
edō		ederem,	ēsem
edis, ēs		ederēs,	ēssēs
edit, ēst		ederet,	ēset
edimus		ederēmus,	ēssēmus
editis, ēstis		ederētis,	ēssētis
edunt		ederent,	ēssent
IMPERATIVE			
<i>Present</i>		<i>Future</i>	
ede, ēs	edite, ēste	editō, ēstō	editōte, ēstōte
			eduntō

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
ēstur, editur		ēssētur, ederētur	

Archaic Forms of the Present Subjunctive

edim, edis, edit,
edimus, editis, edint

NOTE.—The corresponding forms of **ēsse** and **esse** are distinguished only by the long vowel of **ēsse**.

140. Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, to bear, bring

Active	INDICATIVE	Passive
	<i>Present</i>	
ferō		feror
fers		ferris
fert		fertur
ferimus		ferimur
fertis		ferimini
ferunt		feruntur

SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Imperfect</i>			
ferrem		ferrer	
INFINITIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
ferre		ferri	
IMPERATIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
<i>Future</i>			
fertō	fertōte	fertor	
fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

NOTES. — 1. The vowel *i* is dropped before *t* or *s*; *ē* is dropped before *r*.

2. The other forms are regular: Pres. Subj. **feram, ferar**; Impf. Ind. **ferēbam, ferēbar**; Fut. **feram, ferar**; Perf. Subj. **tulerim**; Pluperf. Ind. **tuleram**; Pluperf. Subj. **tulisse**; Perf. Inf. **tulisse**; Fut. **lātūrus esse**; Pres. Part. **ferēns**; Perf. Part. **lātus**; Fut. Part. **lātūrus**; Gerundive, **ferendus**.

3. The compounds are like **ferre**.

4. **Sustuli** and **sublātus** are parts of **tollō**.

- 141. Volō, velle, volui, to wish, to be willing**
Nōlō (nē-volō), nōlle, nōlui, to be unwilling
Mālō (magis-volō), mālle, mālui, to prefer

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		
<i>Present</i>					
volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
vis	nōn vis	māvis	velis	nōlis	mālis
vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Imperfect</i>					
volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Future</i>					
volam	nōlam	mālam			

Perfect

voluī nōluī māluī voluerim nōluerim māluerim

Pluperfect

volueram nōlueram mālueram voluissem nōluissem māluissem

Future Perfect

voluerō nōluerō māluerō

INFINITIVE

Present

velle nōlle mälle voluisse nōluisse māluisse

*Perfect**Present*

nōli, nōlite

IMPERATIVE

Future

nōlitō, nōlitō nōlitōte, nōluntō

PARTICIPLE

Present

volēns

nōlēns

—

NOTES. — 1. The other forms are lacking. The Pres. Part. of **volō** is usually supplied by **cupiēns**; the Pres. Part. of **nōlō** by **invītus**.

2. Instead of the form **sī vīs**, we usually find **sīs**.

142. **Eō, ire, ivī (iī), itūrus, to go**

REMARK. — The Stem-Vowel **I** becomes **e** before **a, o, u**.

INDICATIVE

Present

eō, is, it
imus, itis, eunt

Imperfect

ibam

Future

ibō

Perfect

ivī, iī
ivistī, iīstī
ivīt, iīt
ivimus, iīmus
ivistis, iīstis
ivērunt, iērunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

eam, eās, eat
eāmus, eātis, eant

irem

iverim

		<i>Pluperfect</i>		
iveram			ivissem	
		<i>Future Perfect</i>		
iverō				
		IMPERATIVE		
<i>Present</i>			<i>Future</i>	
i	ite		itō	itōte
			itō	euntō
		INFINITIVE		
		<i>Perfect</i>		
ire		ivisse (isse)	itūrus esse	
PARTICIPLE		SUPINE	GERUND	
<i>Present</i>		itum, itū	N. (ire)	
iēns (Gen. euntis)			G. eundi	
			D. eundō	
<i>Future</i>			Ac. eundum	
itūrus			Ab. eundō	

NOTES. — 1. Passive forms of the simple verb are found only in the third person singular: as **itur**, **ibātur**, **itum est**; but transitive compounds have the full Passive conjugation.

2. The compounds are like **ire**, but **ambire** is of the Fourth Conjugation.

3. **Queō**, *I can*, and **nequeō**, *I can not*, are conjugated like **ire**, but are usual only in the Pres. Ind. and Subj. The Impf. Ind. and Subj. are sometimes found. In the first person singular, Pres. Ind., Cicero uses **nōn queō** for **nequeō**.

143. **Fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, used as Passive of **facere**, *to do*.

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
		<i>Present</i>		
fiō	(fimus)		fiam	fiāmus
fis	(fitis)		fiās	fiātis
fit	fiunt		fiat	fiant
		<i>Imperfect</i>		
fiēbam			fierem	
		<i>Future</i>		
fiam, fiēs, fiet				
fiēmus, fiētis, fient				

		<i>Perfect</i>	
factus sum			factus sim
		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
factus eram			factus essem
		<i>Future Perfect</i>	
factus erō			
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
fi	fite	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i> <i>Future</i>
		fieri	factus esse factum iri
		PARTICIPLE	
	<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Gerundive</i>
	factus		faciendus

DEFECTIVE VERBS

144. 1. *Āiō, I say, I affirm.*

INDICATIVE		<i>Present</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE	
āiō	—		—	—
ais	—		āiās	—
ait	aiunt		aiat	aiant
	<i>Imperfect</i>		IMPERATIVE	
āiebam	āiebāmus		ai (rare)	
āiebās	āiebātis		PARTICIPLE	
āiebat	āiebant		aiēns (rare)	

NOTE. — The interrogative form **ais-ne** is shortened to **ain**.

2. **Inquam, I say**, used parenthetically in direct quotation.

INDICATIVE		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
inquam	inquiēbat	inquiēs
inquis		inquiet
inquit	<i>Perfect</i>	
(inquimus)	inquisti	
(inquitis)	inquit	
inquiunt		

3. **Quaesō, quaesumus, I beg**, is ordinarily used either as an intensive or to soften a command.

4. **Fārī, to speak** (found only in poetry, except in compounds).

INDICATIVE			
<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
fātur	fābor fābitur	fātus sum	fātus eram
IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	GERUND	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
fāre	fārī	fandi fandō	fātus
PRESENT PARTICIPLE			SUPINE
N.	(fāns)		fātū
G.	fantis		
D.	fanti		
Ac.	fantem		

5. The Imperatives: (h)avē, (h)avēte, *hail!* Inf. (h)avēre. **salvē, salvēte, hail!** Inf. salvēre. Fut. salvēbis. **cedo, cete, here with it!**

6. The Perfects **meminī, I remember ; ōdī, I hate ; coepī, I have begun.**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	<i>Perfect</i>	
meminī		meminerim
ōdī		ōderim
coepī		coeperim
	<i>Pluperfect</i>	
memineram		meminissem
ōderam		ōdissem
coeperam		coepissem
<i>Future Perfect</i>		IMPERATIVE
meminerō		mementō
ōderō		mementōte
coeperō		

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
meminisse	—	—	—
ōdisse	ōsūrus esse	ōsus	ōsūrus
coepisse	coeptūrus esse	coeptus	coeptūrus

NOTE.—**Coeptus sum** is generally used with the Passive Infinitive: **urbs aedificārī coepta est**, *the city began to be built*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

145. There are three classes of Impersonal Verbs; that is, verbs which have no definite person for a subject, and which are used only in the third person singular of a finite mood and in the Infinitive.

1. Those exclusively impersonal:—

- decet, -uit, -ēre, *it becomes.*
- dēdecet, -uit, -ēre, *it is unbecoming.*
- libet, -uit (-itum est), -ēre, *it is pleasing.*
- licet, -uit (-itum est), -ēre, *it is permitted.*
- miseret, -uit, -ēre, *it causes pity.*
- oportet, -uit, -ēre, *it behooves.*
- paenitet, -uit, -ēre, *it repents.*
- piget, -uit, -ēre, *it displeases.*
- pudet, -uit (-itum est), -ēre, *it shames.*
- rēfert, rētulit, rēferre, *it is of importance.*
- taedet, —, -ēre, *it wearies.*
- (pertaedet), -taesum est, -ēre, *it disgusts.*

2. Verbs implying operations of nature are usually impersonal:—

- advesperāscit, -āvit, -ere, *evening approaches.*
- fulget, fulsit, -ēre, *it lightens.*
- grandinat, -āvit, -āre, *it hails.*
- inlūcēscit, -lūxit, -ere, *it grows light.*

ningit, ninxit, -ere, *it snows.*

pluit, pluit, -ere, *it rains.*

tonat, -uit, -āre, *it thunders.*

3. Verbs used impersonally in certain meanings:—

accēdit, *it is added*; accidit, *it happens* (unexpectedly); appāret, *it is evident*; attinet, *it concerns*; condūcit, *it is profitable*; cōstat, *it is agreed, it is certain*; contingit, *it happens* (fortunately); convenit, *it is agreed*; dolet, *it pains*; ēvenit, *it comes to pass*; expedit, *it is expedient*; fit, *the result is*; fallit, fugit, praeterit, *it escapes notice*; interest, *it is of importance*; iuvat, *it delights*; liquet, *it appears* (in legal formulas); patet, *it is manifest*; placet, *it is resolved*; praestat, *it is better*; stat, *it is determined*; sufficit, *it is enough.*

NOTES.—1. The Imperative of Impersonal Verbs is supplied by the Present Subjunctive: thus, **miserat tē pauperum**, *have pity on the poor.*

2. **Paenitet** and **pudet** have the oblique cases of the Gerund: **paenitendī causā**. **Pudet** has a Gerundive.

3. Almost any verb may be used impersonally: **pūgnātum est**, *a battle was fought.*

ABUNDANT VERBS

146. Abundant Verbs have the same meaning expressed by different forms of conjugation: thus, **lavāre** and **lavere**. Again, these verbs may be Active and Deponent of the same conjugation: thus, **adsentiō** and **adsentior**.

INCEPTIVE OR INCHOATIVE VERBS (SEE 157. 2)

147. These have **-scō** or **-scor** in the Present. They denote the beginning of an action or state. All are of the Third Conjugation. They are formed from verb-stems or from nouns and adjectives.

1. **Inceptives from Verbs**

calēscō, caluī, <i>to become hot.</i>	Stem Verb, caleō.
coalēscō, coaluī, <i>to unite.</i>	alō.
condolēscō, condoluī, <i>to ache.</i>	doleō.
conticēscō, conticuī, <i>to cease speaking.</i>	taceō.
convalēscō, convaluī, <i>to recover health.</i>	valeō.
flōrēscō, flōruī, <i>to bloom.</i>	flōreō.
exārdēscō, exārsī, <i>to take fire.</i>	ārdeō.
horrēscō, horruī, <i>to grow rough.</i>	horreō.
liquēscō, —, <i>to become liquid.</i>	liqueō.

2. **Inceptives from Nouns and Adjectives**

dītēscō, —, <i>to grow rich, from dīs, rich.</i>
ēvānēscō, ēvānuī, <i>to vanish, from vānus, empty.</i>
īgnēscō, —, <i>to take fire, from īgnis, fire.</i>
mātūrēscō, mātūruī, <i>to become ripe, from mātūrus, ripe.</i>
obdūrēscō, obdūruī, <i>to grow hard, from dūrus, hard.</i>
obmūtēscō, obmūtuī, <i>to become dumb, from mūtus, dumb.</i>

PARTICLES

ADVERBS

148. Adverbs are usually oblique cases of Adjectives or Pronouns.

I. ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS

BY SPECIAL ENDINGS

1. Adjectives and participles in **-us** and **-er** form the adverb in **ē**: —

Adj. **doctus**, *learned*
miser, *wretched*

Adv. **doctē**, *learnedly*
miserē, *wretchedly*

NOTE.—*bene*, from *bonus*, and *male*, from *malus*, have *ē*.

2. The ending *-iter* is used with adjectives and participles of the Third Declension; but if the word ends in *-ns* or *-rs*, the adverb ends in *-ter*:—

Adj. *ūtilis*, *useful*
ācer, *sharp*
prūdēns, *wise*
 also *audāx*, *bold*

Adv. *ūtiliter*, *usefully*
ācriter, *sharply*
prūdentē, *wisely*
audācter, *boldly*

NOTE.—Some adverbs from adjectives in *-us* have the ending *-iter* as well as *-ē*: *firmus*, *firm*, *fīrmē* and *fīrmiter*, *fīrmly*; *largus*, *abundant*, *largē* and *largiter*, *abundantly*. *Alius* forms *aliter*; *violentus* forms *violenter*.

3. *-tim*, *-ātim*, *-itim* are added to nouns, and to participles in *-us*: thus, *tribūtim*, *tribe by tribe*; *nōminātim*, *by name*; *virītim*, *man by man*.

4. *-itus* is added to some adjectives and nouns: *divīnitus*, *divinely*.

BY CASE-FORMS

149. 1. The Neuter Accusative forms in *-um* of adjectives of the First and Second Declension, and in *-e* of the Third, are used as adverbs: *prīum*, *first*; *cēterum*, *in other respects*; *facile*, *easily*.

2. The Ablative form in *ō* from adjectives and participles of the Second Declension: *crēbrō*, *frequently*; *serō*, *late*; *subitō*, *suddenly*; but *citō*, *quickly*.

NOTE.—Sometimes they have both the endings *ē* and *ō*, but with different meanings: *certō*, *certainly*, *certē*, *at least*.

3. The Ablative form in *-ā*, *-e*, *-is* of adjectives and nouns: *dextrā*, *on the right*; *forte*, *by chance*; *grātis*, *gratuitously*.

BY COMPOSITION

150. 1. Of a Preposition with its case: *antēā*, formerly; *imprimis*, especially; *dēnuō*, anew.

2. Of other words: *hodiē*, to-day; *māgnopere* (*māgnō opere*), greatly; *quotannis*, yearly.

151. II. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS

Adverbs of Place

Interrogative	Relative	Demonstrative	Indefinite
ubi , where?	ubi , where	ibi , there (hic, istic, illic) ibidem , in the same place	alicubi , somewhere (uspam, usquam)
unde , whence?	unde , whence	inde , thence (hinc, istinc, illinc) indidem , from the same place	alicunde , from somewhere
quō , whither?	quō , whither	eō , thither (hūc, istūc, illūc) eōdem , to the same place	aliquō , to some place (usquam)
quā , on what side?	quā , where	eā , there (hāc, istāc, illāc) eādem , on the same side	aliquā , on some side

Adverbs of Time

quandō , when?	cum , when, as	tum, tunc , at that time	aliquandō , at some time
quotiēns , how often?	quotiēns , (as often) as	totiēns , as often	umquam , ever aliquotiēns , sometimes

Adverbs of Manner

quam , how much?	quam , (as much) as	tam , so much
ut, utī , how?	ut , how, as	ita (sic), thus
quōmodo , in what way?	(sicut, quōmodo, item, just so quemadmodum)	

COMPARISON OF THE ADVERB

152. 1. The only adverbs that can be compared are those formed by the endings **-ē, -ō, -(i)ter** from adjectives that are compared, and adverbs in **e**: as **facile**. The Comparative of the adverb ends in **-ius**, like the neuter Comparative of the adjective: as (**doctē**) **doctius**. The Superlative is formed from the Superlative of the adjective by adding **-ē** instead of the adjectival termination: as (**doctissimus**) **doctissimē**.

2. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bene, melius, optimē, well.

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, for a long time.

māgnopere, magis, māmē (also **māximopere, māmō opere**), *greatly*.

male, pēius, pessimē, badly.

multum, plūs, plurimum, much.

nōn multum or parum, minus, minimē, little.

prope, propius, proximē, near.

saepe, saepius, saepissimē, frequently.

3. Without a Positive are:—

dēterius, dēterrimē, worse.

ōcius, ōcissimē, more swiftly.

potius, potissimum, preferably.

prius, primum and prīmō, sooner.

4. Without a Comparative are:—

meritō, meritissimō, deservedly; and nūper, nūperimē, recently.

5. Without a Superlative are:—

satis, satius, enough; and secus, sētius, otherwise.

PREPOSITIONS

153. 1. Prepositions were originally adverbs which, later on, took a case with them: *contrā*, *opposite*; *contrā hostem*, *against the enemy*. They define more closely the local ideas of the cases. The Accusative and the Ablative are the only cases that are used with prepositions. (For lists, see **258**.)

2. The so-called Inseparable Prepositions are obsolete adverbs, found only in composition:—

amb-, *am-*, *around*: *ambiō*, *I go around*; *amplector*, *I embrace*.

dis-, *dī-*, *apart*: *discerpō*, *I tear apart*; *dīlābor*, *I fall down*.

por-, *forth*: *porrigere*, *to reach out*.

re- (before a vowel or *h*, *red-*), *back*: *remittere*, *to send back*; *redeō*, *I return*. *Reddō*, *I give back*, has *red-* even before a consonant.

sē- (before a vowel *sēd-*), *apart from*: *sēiungere*, *to separate*; *sēditiō*, *a going aside*.

vē-, *without*: *vēcors*, *without reason*; *vēsānus*, *insane*.

CONJUNCTIONS

154. Conjunctions are Co-ordinate, connecting similar constructions; or Subordinate, joining dependent constructions to those on which they depend. (See **464–470**.)

INTERJECTIONS

155. 1. Of Pain: *hei*, *heu*, *ō*, *vae*. (See **200**. Note 2.)

2. Of Surprise: *ecce*, *ēn*, *hem*, *ō*. (See **200**. Note 3.)

3. Of Question, Address: *eho*, *heus*, *ō*, *prō*. (See **200**. Note 1.)

NOTE.—The following forms are used as Interjections:—

hercle (*hercule*), *by Hercules!* *meherculēs*, *mehercle*, *by Hercules!* *medius fidius* (= *medius fidius iuvet*), *so help me the god of truth!* *mēcastor*, *by Castor!* *pol!* *edepol!* *Pollux!* *by Pollux!*

FORMATION OF WORDS

156. By the formation of words we mean the way in which new words are made from words already extant, either by Derivation or by Composition. In Derivation, we distinguish stem-words (Primitive) and derived words (Derivatives). In Composition, we have Simple words and Compound words.

That part of a word which forms the basis for several kindred words is called the Root:—

reg- is root for **regō**, **rēx**, **rēgnum**.

DERIVATION

DERIVATION OF VERBS

I. FROM OTHER VERBS

157. 1. Frequentatives (Intensives) denote an often-repeated or strengthened action. They are formed from the Perfect Participle by a change of **-us** to **-āre**:—

From **trahō** (Part. **tractus**) is formed the Frequentative **tractāre**, *to drag violently*.

From **currō** (Part. **cursus**) is formed the Frequentative **cursāre**, *to run to and fro*.

The Participle in **-ātus** changes into **-itāre**: **clāmitāre**, *to bawl*, from **clāmātus**.

2. Inceptives (Inchoatives) denote a beginning. (See 147.)

3. **Desideratives** denote a desire. They are formed on Participial stems, end in **-uriō**, and are of the Fourth Conjugation:—

From **edō**, *I eat* (Part. **ēsus**), is formed the Desiderative **ēsuriō**, *I am hungry*.

4. **Diminutives** denote a diminution or a weakening of the action. They end in **-illō** and are of the First Conjugation:—

cantillō, *I hum a tune*, from **cantō**.

scribillō, *I scribble*, from **scribō**.

II. FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

158. 1. Those of the First Conjugation are usually transitive; those of the Second are intransitive:—

armāre, *to arm* (from **arma**, *weapons*).

lūcēre, *to grow light* (from **lūx**, *light*).

2. Those of the Third and Fourth are partly transitive, partly intransitive:—

metuere, *to fear* (from **metus**, *fear*).

finīre, *to end* (from **finis**, *end*).

sitīre, *to be thirsty* (from **sitis**, *thirst*).

DERIVATION OF NOUNS

I. FROM OTHER NOUNS

159. 1. **Diminutives** denote that which is small of its kind. They are also used to denote affection or contempt. They end in **-ulus**, **-ula**, **-ulum** (after a vowel, in **-olus**, **-ola**, **-olum**); **-culus**, **-cula**, **-culum**; **-ellus**, **-ella**, **-ellum**; **-illus**, **-illa**, **-illum**. They retain the gender of the stem-word.

Stem-word	Diminutive	Meaning
puer , <i>boy</i>	puerulus	<i>little boy</i>
filia , <i>daughter</i>	filiola	<i>little daughter</i>
homō , <i>man</i>	homunculus	<i>manikin</i>
lapis , <i>stone</i>	lapillus	<i>pebble</i>
sacrum , <i>temple</i>	sacellum	<i>chapel</i>

2. The place where things are stored, or where animals are kept, is indicated by the following endings: —

-ārium: as **aerārium**, *treasury*

-ētum: as **quercētum**, *oak-grove*

-īle: as **ovīle**, *sheep-fold*

3. The following endings are generally in nouns that modify the names of persons: —

-īna, to indicate a professional act, or the place in which it is exercised: **medicīna**, *surgery*; **tōnstrīna**, *barber's shop*.

-ium, to indicate a condition, or a union of persons: **conlēgium**, *union*; **servitium**, *slavery*.

4. **Patronymics** denote descent, though sometimes they denote the followers of, the partisans of: as **Aeneadēs**, *the partisans of Aeneas*.

Masculine Patronymics end in

-idēs (*-ιδης*): **Priamidēs**, *son of Priam*

-idēs (*-ειδης*): **Atridēs**, *son of Atreus*

-iadēs: **Anchisiadēs**, *son of Anchises*

-adēs: **Aeneadēs**, *son of Aeneas*

Feminine Patronymics end in

-is: **Tantalīs**, *daughter of Tantalus*

-ēis: **Nērēis**, *daughter of Nereus*

-ias: **Thestias**, *daughter of Thestius*

5. The suffix **-ātus** indicates official position: **cōnsulātus**, *consulship* (**cōnsul**).

II. FROM ADJECTIVES

160. Nouns derived from Adjectives end in **-ia**, **-itia**, **-tās** (**-itās**), **-tūdō** (**-itūdō**), and occasionally in **-mōnia**. They are abstract, denoting Quality:—

insānia, *madness*; **malitia**, *malice*; **bonitās**, *goodness*; **fortitūdō**, *firmness*; **sāctimōnia**, *holiness*.

III. FROM VERBS

161. 1. Nouns in **-ōs** (**-or**), **-us**, **-ium**, **-ēla**, formed on verbal stems, denote an Act or a State:—

furor, *madness*; **decus**, *grace*; **gaudium**, *joy*; **querēla**, *complaint*.

2. Nouns in **-or**, formed on Participial stems, indicate:—

Regular, or constant, or professional employment in an act: **scriptor**, *scribe*; **pīctor**, *painter*.

A single act so notable that it gives one a historical designation: **Rōmulus conditor**, *Romulus, the founder*.

3. Nouns in **-crum**, **-trum** indicate Place or Means:—

lavācrum, *bath*; **sepulcrum**, *burial-place*; **arātrum**, *plough*.

4. Nouns in **-iō**, **-us** (Gen. **-ūs**), formed on Participial stems, usually denote a quality, or an act considered alone: **institūtiō**, *education*; **mōtus**, *motion*.

Sometimes they are concrete, and denote the Result of an action: **accūsātiō**, *a suit*.

NOTE.—The endings **-idō**, **-ium**, **-sūra**, **-tūra**, have the same meaning: **libīdō**, *desire*, **cultūra**, *cultivation*; **cēnsūra**, *ensorship*.

5. Nouns in **-men**, **-mentum**, **-bulum**, **-culum**, **-ulum**, denote Means, Instrument, or Place of an action:—

volūmen, *a roll*; **alimentum**, *nourishment*; **vēnābulum**, *hunting-spear*; **gubernāculum**, *rudder*; **vinculum**, *chain*.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

I. FROM VERBS

162. 1. The endings **-bundus** and **-cundus** give the adjective a little stronger force than the Present Participle has: **mīrābundus**, *full of wonder*; **verēcundus**, *modest*.

2. The ending **-idus** denotes a State or Characteristic: **pavidus**, *timid*.

3. The endings **-ilis** and **-bilis** denote Capability or Desert in the Passive: **docilis**, *teachable*; **facilis**, *easy to be done*; **mōbilis**, *easily moved*.

4. The endings **-āx** and **-ulus** denote Tendency, usually toward evil: **fallāx**, *deceitful*; **mendāx**, *lying*; **garrulus**, *loquacious*.

II. FROM COMMON NOUNS

163. 1. The ending **-eus** means *made of*: **ferreus**, *iron*; **aureus**, *golden*.

2. **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-ārius**, **-ēnsis**, **-ius**, **-icus**, **-icius**, **-ivus**, **-nus** mean *pertaining to, connected with*: **nāvālis**, *naval*; **populāris**, *democratic*; **legiōnārius**, *legionary*; **forēnsis**, *public*; **rēgius**, *kingly*; **bellicus**, *military*; **tribūnīcius**, *pertaining to a tribune*; **tempestivus**, *stormy*; **paternus**, *paternal*.

3. **-ōsus** and **-lentus** indicate *fulness*: **insidiōsus**, *dangerous*; **vinolentus**, *drunken*.

4. **-ātus**, **-itus**, **-ūtus** mean *furnished with*: **ālātus**, *winged*; **auritus**, *furnished with ears*; **nāsūtus**, *having a large nose*.

5. **-ānus** and **-īnus** indicate *pertaining to a place, or origin from*: **urbānus**, *pertaining to the city*; **dīvinus**, *of divine origin*.

6. **-ter (-tris)**, *pertaining to*; **equestris**, *equestrian*.

III. FROM PROPER NAMES

164. 1. Adjectives are usually formed from the names of persons by the endings **-ānus**, **-īnus**, **-iānus**: **Sullānus**, *pertaining to Sulla*; **Verrīnus**, *pertaining to Verres*; **Tullīānus**, *pertaining to Tullius*.

2. Roman family names in **-ius** retain this form as an adjective to show the work done by a member of the family: **via Appia**, *the Appian road*.

3. The endings **-ēus** and **-icus** are usually found only with Greek proper names: **Epicūrēus**, *Epicurean*; **Sōcraticus**, *Socratic*.

4. Adjectives used as nouns are formed from the names of places by the endings **-ānus**, **-īnus**, **-ēnsis**, **-ās** (Gen. **-ātis**): **Rōmānus**, *Roman*; **Caudīnus**, *of Caudium*; **Cannēnsis**, *of Cannae*; **Arpīnās**, *of Arpinum*.

NOTE. — In Greek words the endings are **-ius** and **-aeus**: — **Salamīnius**, *of Salamis*; **Lārissaeus**, *of Larissa*.

5. Adjectives are formed from names of nations or tribes by adding **-icus**, sometimes **-ius**: **Gallicus**, *Gallic* (from **Gallus**); **Thrācius**, *Thracian* (from **Thrāx**).

6. Most names of countries are derived from adjectives, but even then adjectives are sometimes formed from them, to point out something in a foreign land: **Hispāniēnsis exercitus**, *the (Roman) army in Spain*.

IV. FROM OTHER ADJECTIVES

165. These are Diminutives, and end in **-ulus**, **-olus**, **-ellus**, **-culus**; **-olus** occurs after **e** and **i**, otherwise **-ulus**; **-culus** occurs after **e**, **i**, **u**, and consonant stems: **albulus**, *whitish*; **parvulus**, *little*; **aureolus**, *golden*; **misellus** (= **miser-lus**), *wretched*; **pauperculus**, *poor*.

V. FROM ADVERBS

166. 1. Adjectives of Time end in **-tinus** (**-tinus**), **-ernus** (**-urnus**): **pristinus**, *ancient*; **repentinus**, *sudden*; **hodiernus**, *of to-day*; **nocturnus**, *nocturnal*.

2. Adjectives of Place end in **-cus** (**-quus**): **posticus**, *in the rear*.

COMPOSITION

167. The first part of a compound word is the modifier which gives to the base of the word a more precise meaning. The base can be a verb, a noun, or an adjective.

COMPOSITION OF VERBS

168. The base is always a verb; the modifier may be

1. The stem of a verb; found, however, only in compounds of **faciō**: **adsuēfaciō**, *to accustom*; **calefaciō**, *to make warm*; **patefaciō**, *to open*.

2. The stem of a noun: **animadvertō**, *to notice*; **testificor**, *to call to witness*.

3. A particle: —

An adverb: **benefaciō**, *to treat well*.

A preposition: **referō**, *to bring back*.

NOTES. — 1. **ǣ** and **ǣ** are usually changed into **i**; **ae** into **i**: — **cōnficiō** (from **faciō**); **redimō** (from **emō**); **conquīro** (from **quaerō**).

Before two consonants **ǣ** passes into **ǣ**: **cōnfectus** (from **factus**).

2. **ǣ** remains only in the compounds of **caveō**, **maneō**, **trahō**, and some of those of **agō**, but becomes **ǣ** in the compounds of **arceō**, **carpō**, **fallō**, **farciō**, **gradior**, **pariō**, **patior**, **scandō**, **spargō**.

ǣ remains in the compounds of **edō**, **ferō**, **gerō**, **metō**, **petō**, **serō**, **tegō**, **terō**, **vehō**, and some of those of **legō** (**perlegō**, **neglegō**, **intellegō**; but **conligō**, **dēligō**).

ae is retained only in compounds of **haereō** and in **pertaesum est**.

COMPOSITION OF NOUNS

169. Nouns may be compounded:—

1. Of a noun-stem and a verb-stem; this is joined to the base by **i**: **agricola** (**agr-i-cola**), *farmer*; **arm-i-ger**, *armor-bearer*.

2. Of two nouns, or a noun and an adjective: **manū-missiō**, *the freeing of a slave*; **bi-duum**, *a period of two days*.

3. Of a preposition and a noun: **dē-missiō**, *a letting down*.

COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES

170. Adjectives may be compounded:—

1. Of two nouns, or a noun and an adjective. The connecting vowel is **i**, if the base begins with a consonant: **miser-i-cors**, *pitiful*.

2. Of a preposition and a noun, **ā**, **dē**, **ex**, **in**, **sē** having a negative force: **con-cors**, *harmonious*; **dē-mēns**, *distracted*.

3. Of a preposition and an adjective, **in** having a negative force, while **per** and **prae** intensify, and **sub** weakens: **in-dīgnus**, *unworthy*; **per-modestus**, *very modest*; **sub-mōrōsus**, *somewhat peevish*.

SYNTAX (SENTENCE-BUILDING)

AGREEMENT

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

171. Subject. — The Subject may be a noun, a pronoun, an adjective or participle, an indeclinable word, an infinitive, or a clause: *cōsul imperat, the consul orders; ille maeret, he mourns; bonī amantur, the loyal are loved; amantēs amantur, the loving are loved; “a” anceps est, “a” is doubtful; errāre hūmānum est, to err is human; opportunē accidit quod advēnistī, it was fortunate that you came.* The Subject is in the Nominative.

NOTE. — Unless emphatic, or for the sake of contrast, the subject, if a personal pronoun, is omitted: *vōs manētis, ego abeō, you remain, I go away.*

172. Indeterminate Subject. — The Indeterminate Subject, where reference is not to any particular person, is expressed:

1. By the passive of transitive verbs: *laudor, I am praised; i.e. some one praises me.*

2. By the 3d sing. pass. of intransitives: *itur, some one goes.*

3. By the 3d plur. act.: *dīcunt, they say; i.e. it is generally reported.*

4. By the 1st plur. act., when the speaker includes himself: *quae nōn habemus cupimus, people (the speaker included) long for what they do not possess.*

5. By the second person singular Subjunctive active (see 321. 3): *dīcās, you may say = some one may say.*

6. By an indefinite pronoun, generally in introducing an objection: *fōrsitan quispiam dīxerit, possibly some one might say.*

173. 1. **Predicate.** — The Predicate is usually a verb, but may be a noun, pronoun, or adjective with the copula *esse*, *to be*: *puer scribit, the boy is writing*; *arbor est viridis, the tree is green*; *homō est Thrāx, the man is a Thracian.*

2. *Esse, to live, exist*, is an independent verb: *est deus, God exists.*

It is also used with an adverb to denote a State or Condition: *tūtō esse, to be safe.*

3. Other copulas besides *esse* are: *fierī, to become*; *existere, to appear*; *manēre, to stay*; *vidērī, to seem*; and the passive of such verbs as take a double Accusative in the active.

4. In compound tenses, parts of the verb *sum* are often omitted, especially *est, sunt, esse.*

THE SUBJECT AND THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

174. 1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person: *vōs valētis, you are well*; *annī praetereunt, the years pass by.*

2. If the predicate nominative is an adjective, a participle, or a pronoun, it agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case: *nēmō fit cāsū sapiēns, no one becomes wise by accident*; *tū beātus vidēris, you seem happy*; *puer laudātus est, the boy was praised*; *virtūs laudanda est, virtue is to be praised.*

3. If the predicate is a noun or adjective, it agrees with the subject:

In case always: **Athēnae omnium artium domicilium fuerunt**, *Athens was the home of all arts.*

In gender usually: **Athēnae omnium doctrinārum inventricēs fuerunt**, *Athens was the discoverer of all sciences; leō est rēx animālium*, *the lion is the king of animals.*

In number, if it indicates a person: **Fabius populi Rōmāni scūtum vocābātur**, *Fabius was called the shield of the Roman people.*

4. If the subject and predicate nominative differ in number and gender, the copula usually agrees with the nearest noun. This is regularly the case, if an Infinitive is the subject: **contentum suis rēbus esse māximae sunt divitiae**, *to be content with one's lot is the greatest riches.*

5. When **cum** with its case is joined to a singular subject, the predicate is sometimes in the plural: **māter cum filiā capiuntur**, *the mother with her daughter are captured.*

6. The predicate sometimes gets its number and gender from the idea suggested, and not from the grammatical form of the subject. This is the case with collective nouns and with **mīlia** with a personal signification: **cum tanta multitudō lapidēs conicerent**, in **mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī**, *Caes. B. G. II. 6, since so great a multitude were hurling stones, no one could stand on the wall.*

SEVERAL SUBJECTS

175. 1. **Number.**—With two or more singular subjects, connected by *and*, the predicate is in the plural, especially if the subjects are persons: **Isocratēs et Gorgiās ad summam senectūtem vixerunt**, *Isocrates and Gorgias lived to extreme old age.*

2. The predicate is in the singular, if it refers to each subject, or if the subjects form a sum total: **religiō et fidēs**

antepōnātur amicitiae, let religion and faith be preferred to friendship; senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit bellō opus esse, the senate and Roman people know that there is need of war.

3. When the predicate precedes, it agrees with the nearest subject: *vīsaē sunt facēs ārdorque caeli, torches and the flame of the sky were seen.*

4. If several singular subjects are united by *nec . . . nec, aut . . . aut*, the predicate is in the singular rather than the plural. But the plural is used with personal subjects: *in hominibus iuvandis aut mōrēs spectārī aut fortūna solet, in aiding men either custom or fortune is usually looked to.*

176. Person.—If the subjects are of different persons, the predicate is of the first person rather than the second, and of the second rather than the third: *ego, tū, et Balbus manūs sustulimus, you, and Balbus, and I lifted up our hands.*

NOTE.—Observe that the order in Latin is the order in persons: first, second, third.

177. 1. Gender.—If the predicate is an adjective or participle, it agrees with the subjects in gender: *pater et fīlius mortuī sunt, the father and his son are dead.*

2. If the subject consists of two or more abstract feminine nouns, the predicate is sometimes neuter: *temeritās et incōstantia fugienda sunt, rashness and fickleness should be avoided.*

3. If the subjects are of different genders, the predicate is in the masculine if they are names of persons, in the neuter if they are names of things: *iam prīdem māter et fīlius mortuī sunt, the mother and the son have been dead*

for a long time; dīvitiae et honōrēs incerta sunt, riches and honors are uncertain.

4. If some of the subjects are names of persons and some of things, the predicate gets its gender from the persons: **rēx rēgiaque classis unā profecti sunt**, *the king and the royal fleet set out together.*

NOTE. — The predicate can get its gender from the nearest noun.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

178. An attributive adjective agrees with the noun it limits in gender, number, and case: **sapiēns cōsul**, *a wise consul.*

2. An attributive adjective belonging to two or more words generally agrees with the nearest: **patrius mōs et disciplīna**, *ancestral custom and rule.*

The predicate adjective has been treated under **171** and **173**.

APPPOSITION

179. By Apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another that denotes the same person or thing: **Alexander rēx**, *Alexander the king.*

The noun in apposition usually defines more particularly the noun with which it is in apposition.

The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in case, and, as far as possible, in gender and number: **urbs Rōma**, *the city of Rome*; **urbs Athēnae**, *the city of Athens*; **Rhēnus flūmen**, *the river Rhine.*

180. 1. Partitive Apposition. — In Partitive Apposition the whole is subdivided into its parts: **duo rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitatē auxērunt**, *two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace.*

2. An Accusative may be in apposition with a clause : **admoneor ut aliquid etiam de sepultūrā dicendum existimem, rem nōn difficilem**, *I am reminded to consider that something should be said on the subject of burial also, a matter not difficult.*

181. 1. **Predicate Attribution and Apposition.** — Any case may have another word in the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition : **Sōcratem sapientissimum virum Athēniēnsēs interfēcērunt**, *the Athenians slew Socrates, a man of the greatest wisdom.*

2. This predicate attribute is found in expressions of Office, Worth, Age : **Catō senex histōriam scribere instituit**, *Cato, when an old man, began to write history.*

3. It indicates mental or physical condition, or has a local or temporal force : **invītus hōc fēcī**, *I did this unwillingly* ; **mīlitēs exanimātī pervēnērunt**, *the soldiers came up out of breath* ; **Sōcratēs primus hōc docuit**, *Socrates was the first who taught this.*

NOTES. — 1. This construction is most common with the adjectives **primus** *first* ; **princeps**, *chief* ; **prior**, *former* ; **posterior**, *following* ; **postrēmus**, *last* ; **ūnus**, *one* ; **sōlus**, *alone* ; **volēns**, **nōlēns**, etc.

2. The predicate sometimes agrees with the appositive : **Volsiniī, oppidum Tūscōrum, concremātum est fulmine**, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was consumed by a lightning-flash.*

AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS

182. 1. **Relative and Demonstrative Pronouns** agree in gender and number with the words on which they depend, or to which they refer, but they get their case from the construction of the sentence : **arborēs serit agricola, quārum fructūs aspiciet numquam**, *the farmer plants trees, of which he will never see the yield* ; **diligentia in omnibus rēbus plū-**

rimum valet; *haec colenda est nobis, diligence is worth much in everything; it should be cultivated by us.*

2. A Relative or a Demonstrative referring to a clause is in the neuter. Instead of **quod** we generally have **id quod**: **Pompēius, quod (id quod) mihi summō dolōri est, ipse sē afflixit**, *Pompey has ruined himself, a thing which is the greatest grief to me.*

3. Referring to two or more words, the laws already given hold good. But if the antecedent is a collective noun, the relative is usually in the plural: **Caesar omnem equitātum praemittit, qui . . . videant**, *Caesar sends forward all the cavalry, to see.*

4. The Relative and the Demonstrative often agree with a predicate noun, instead of with the antecedent: **Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae caput est**, *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

NOTE. — This does not occur when the predicate noun is a proper name: **est genus quoddam hominum quod Hīlōtae vocātur**, *there is a certain class of men which is called Helots*; nor in questions, when the question depends on the idea suggested by a word: **quid est cārītās?** *what is charity?*

5. The person of the verb of a relative clause depends on the person of the antecedent: **ego nōn is sum qui mortis periculō terrear**, *I am not one to be frightened by the fear of death.*

THE CASES

THE ACCUSATIVE

183. The Accusative has three uses:—

It is the case of the Direct Object of an action;

It defines the Compass of an action or quality;

It shows the End or Limit towards which motion is directed.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE DIRECT OBJECT

184. The Direct Object of a transitive verb may represent: —

1. A person or thing, already existing, which is *affected* by the action: **boni cives patriam amant**, *loyal citizens love their country*.

2. A Result not previously existing, but *produced* by the action: **Romulus et Remus urbem condiderunt**, *Romulus and Remus founded a city*.

NOTES. — 1. In changing to the passive construction, the Object Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative: **urbs a Romulo et Remo condita est**, *the city was founded by Romulus and Remus*.

2. A transitive verb is used *absolutely* when it is used without an object: **fama est Helenum Graias regnare per urbes**, *there is a rumor that Helenus is reigning throughout Grecian cities*.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED

185. Type: **amo patriam**, *I love my country*.

1. Intransitive verbs which become transitive when compounded with **circum**, **per**, **praeter**, and **trans** take the Accusative: **circumvenire Gallas**, *to surround the Gauls*; **partes quas modo percucurri**, *Cic. Or. III. 52, the portions that I have just run over*; **iam hos cursu, iam praeterit illos**, *Verg. Aen. IV. 157, now in his course outstrips these, now those*; **transire montes**, *to cross the mountains*.

2. Many verbs compounded with **ad**, **in**, **super**, and some with **ante**, **con**, **inter**, **ob**, and **sub**, take the Accusative: **adit vatem**, *he approaches the priest*; **coire societatem**, *to form a union*; **inire consulatum**, *to enter on a consulship*; **obire legationem**, *to undertake an embassy*; **subire labores**, *to undergo toils*.

NOTE. — This is common with verbs of Surpassing and Excelling, such as **superare**, **anteire**, **antecedere**; but many of these verbs are

used both with the Accusative and with the Dative. With other verbs the preposition is repeated, or the Dative is used: **invādere in hostēs**, *to attack the enemy*.

186. The following **Impersonals** take the Accusative:—

decet, *it is proper*; **dēdecet**, *it is unseemly*; **fallit**, *it deceives*; **fugit**, *it escapes my notice*; **praeterit**, *it escapes*; **orātōrem irāscī minimē decet**, *it ill becomes an orator to get angry*; **simulāre dēdecet**, *to pretend to be is improper*.

NOTE.—**Decet** and **dēdecet** may also have an Infinitive, a neuter pronoun, or an adjective as subject.

187. Verbs of the Affections or Emotions.—These verbs, regularly intransitive, are sometimes used absolutely and sometimes transitively, according to their meaning: **doleō** (**lūgeō**, **maereō**, **fleō**, **gemō**, **lāmentor**) **cāsum Cicerōnis**, *I grieve (mourn, weep) over Cicerō's mishap*; **queror**, **conqueror cāsum Cicerōnis** (or **dē cāsū Cicerōnis**), *I grieve over Cicerō's mishap*; **horreō**, **reformīdō bellum**, *I shudder at war*; **rīdeō incōnstantiam hominum**, *I laugh at the fickleness of men*; **mīror**, **admīror mē ipsum**, *I wonder at myself*.

188. The Accusative as the Object of the Passive.—In poetry, many verbs that have a middle force—that is, whose subject performs an action on itself or on something connected with itself—take an Accusative of the object: **induitur cultum faciemque Diānae**, *she assumes the garb and form of Diana*.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE RESULT PRODUCED

189. Type: **Aenēās urbem condidit**, *Aeneas founded a city*.

Neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives may be used with any verb as the Accusative of the Result Produced: **nōn possum idem glōriārī**, *I cannot make the same boast*; **loquentem vāna**, *talking empty things*.

190. 1. Cognate Accusative. — Any verb may take an Accusative of the Result Produced, if it has a form or a meaning similar to that of the verb. This Accusative regularly has a modifier: *longam viam ire*, *to travel a long journey*.

2. Verbs of Tasting and Smelling take an object of the Result Produced: *vīnum redolēns*, *smelling of wine*; *olet unguenta*, *he smells of perfumes*.

TWO ACCUSATIVES

191. Object and Predicate. — Two Accusatives, the one of the Object, the other of the Predicate Noun are found:

1. With verbs of Naming, as *appellāre*, *nōmināre*, *vocāre*, *dīcere*: *senātus appellat Divitiacum amicum*, *the senate calls Divitiacus friend*.

2. With verbs of Making, Appointing, Choosing; as *facere*, *reddere*, *creāre*, *dēligere*, *dēsīgnāre*: *Pompēius mare tūtum reddidit*, *Pompey made the sea safe*; *populus Rōmānus rēgem Numam creāvit*, *the Roman people made Numa king*.

NOTE. — The only Predicate Accusative with *reddere* is an adjective.

3. With verbs of Considering; as *dūcere*, *exīstimāre*, *indicāre*, *numerāre*, *putāre*: *Catōnem sapientem putant*, *they consider Cato wise*.

4. With verbs of Holding, Giving, Taking; as *habēre*, *dare*, *addere*, *adsūmere*: *addunt Aeduōs amīcōs*, *they add the Aeduans as friends*.

5. With verbs meaning to show oneself in a certain light: *praestā tē virum*, *show yourself a man*.

NOTE. — *Sē praestāre* is used only in a good sense.

6. With verbs meaning to Understand, to Distinguish, to Inscribe, chiefly in the passive: *cōgnōscēs mē tuī cōnsiliī fautōrem*, *you shall find me a promoter of your plan*.

192. Person and Thing. — Two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing, are found with: —

1. Verbs of Teaching and Hiding; as *docēre*, *to teach*; *cēlāre*, *to conceal from*: *Catō ipse filium litterās docuit*, *Cato himself taught his son his letters*; *imperātor iter exercitum cēlāvit*, *the general concealed his route from the army*.

NOTE. — *Docēre* may also take *dē* with the Ablative: *docent eum dē adventū hostium*, *they inform him of the arrival of the enemy*.

Cēlāre, in the passive, always takes *dē* with the Ablative: *māximis dē rēbus cēlātus est*, *he has been kept ignorant of the most important things*.

2. Verbs of Asking, Begging, Demanding; as *poscō*, *flāgitō*, *ōrō*, *rogō*: *Caesar frūmentum cottidīe Aeduōs flāgitābat*, *Caesar each day kept demanding corn of the Aeduans*.

NOTE. — *Postulāre*, *petere*, *precārī*, regularly take *ab* with the Ablative of the Person: *postulō hōc ā tē*, *I demand this of you*.

193. Retained Accusative. — In changing to the Passive construction, the Accusative of the Person becomes the subject, while the Accusative of the Thing is retained:

Active: *Cicerōnem sententiam rogāvērunt*, *they asked Cicero his opinion*.

Passive: *Cicerō sententiam rogātus est*, *Cicero was asked his opinion*.

194. Two Accusatives with Compounds. — Compounds with *trāns* may have, besides the Accusative of the Object, an Accusative depending on *trāns*: *Caesar Germānōs flūmen trāicit*, *Caesar puts the Germans across the river*.

ACCUSATIVES THAT DEFINE THE COMPASS OF AN ACTION OR QUALITY

195. Adverbial Accusative. — This Accusative is found only in neuter adjectives and pronouns used as substan-

tives, and the form is usually felt more as an adverb than a substantive; **multum**, **plūs**, **tantum**, **quantum** are the common words: **multum tē diligō**, *I love you much*.

NOTE. — Some other phrases and expressions fall under this head: **māximam partem**, *for the most part*; **id temporis**, *at that time*; **meam vicem**, *for my part*, etc.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

196. Extent of Space is expressed by the simple Accusative: **Caesar duās fossās xv pedēs lātās perdūxit**, *Caesar made two ditches fifteen feet wide*.

NOTE. — If the idea of space is not suggested by the governing word, **per** with the Accusative is used: **per omnēs partēs prōvinciae**, *through all parts of the province*.

197. Extent in Time is expressed by the Accusative, or, where emphatic, by the Accusative with **per**: **diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt**, *Caes. B. G. I. 15, they made a journey of about fifteen days*; **per decem diēs**, *Cic. in Cat. III. 20. 26, through ten days*.

ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (GREEK ACCUSATIVE)

198. The extent of the action of any verb may be expressed by the Accusative neuter of a pronoun: **nōs aliquid tē iūvimus**, *I have helped you somewhat*.

NOTE. — **Cētera**, *in other respects*, **nihil**, *in no respect*, have the same use: **cētera Grāius fuit**, *Verg. Aen. III. 594, he was in other respects a Greek*.

In poetry, the Accusative of any word may be used as above: **omnia Mercuriō similis**, *Verg. Aen. IV. 558, like unto Mercury in all respects*.

Many so-called Accusatives of Specification are really only cases of retained Accusatives (cf. 193).

ACCUSATIVE OF THE LIMIT OF MOTION

199. The Accusative denotes the End or Limit towards which motion is directed. This is used:—

1. With names of Towns, Cities, and Small Islands: **Caesar Rōmam rediit**, *Caesar returned to Rome*.

2. With **domum** (meaning *home*), **domōs, rūs**: **puer domum revertitur**, *the boy returns home* (but in **domum**, *into the house*); **rūs iit**, *he went to the country*.

NOTES.—1. **Ad** with the Accusative of a town denotes *towards the vicinity of*.

2. **Urbs, oppidum, colōnia, mūnicipium**, without an attribute, are used with a preposition before the name of the city: **in oppidum Cirtam**, *into the town of Cirta*.

With an attribute they follow the name of the city: **Cirtam in oppidum Āfricae**, *into Cirta, a town of Africa*.

3. In poetry, the Limit of Motion may be expressed by the Accusative of any noun without a preposition, though this is not a common construction: **Lāvīniaque vēnit lītora**, Verg. Aen. I. 2–3, *and came to the Lavinian shores*.

4. The motion must be expressed with each item in Latin: *to Caesar in the camp*, **ad Caesarem in castra** (not **castrīs**).

5. **Petō** is transitive and does not allow a preposition.

ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

200. The Accusative of a noun or of a personal pronoun, usually with a modifier, is found in exclamations of wonder or of pain, with or without the interjections **Ō** and **heu**: **mē miserum!** *wretched me!* **Ō fortunātam rem pūblicam!** *O fortunate republic!*

NOTES.—1. For emphasis in address, **Ō** is used with the Vocative.

2. **Vae** takes the Dative: **vae vīctīs!** *woe to the conquered!*

3. **Ēn** and **ecce** take the Nominative also: **ēn Priamus!** *lo Priam!* **ecce homō!** *behold the man!*

For the Accusative with Prepositions, see **258**.

THE DATIVE

DATIVE OF THE OBJECT

201. The Dative is used as the Indirect or Remote Object of a verb, usually of a transitive verb. It generally answers the question "*To whom?*" Transitive verbs take also a direct object in the Accusative: **pater filiō pecūniam dat**, *the father gives his son money*.

202. Dative with Compound Verbs. (See 185. 2.) — Both transitive and intransitive verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **cum (con)**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **sub**, **super** take an indirect object in the Dative: —

1. *Transitive*

addere alicui animum, *to lend one courage*.

adferre alicui dolōrem, *to cause one grief*.

antepōnere honōrem divitiis, *to prefer honor to riches*.

inferre Aeduīs bellum, *to wage war on the Aeduans*.

interclūdere hostibus commeātum, *to cut off supplies from the enemy*.

postpōnere rem rei, *to esteem (one) thing less than (another) thing*.

praeferre rem rei, *to prefer one thing to another*.

praefficere aliquem exercituī, *to place one over the army*.

2. *Intransitive*

intercēdere lēgī, *to oppose a law*.

obvenīre alicui, *to meet some one*.

interesse cōsiliis, *to take part in plans*.

praeesse rei pūblicaē, *to take charge of the state*.

3. Among the common exceptions are: **adiuvō**, **adorior**, **adgredior**, **conlocō**, **comparō**, **impellō**, **incendō**, **incūsō**, **in-**

veniō, interficiō, obsideō, obtineō, opprimō, oppugnō. These take the Accusative (see 185. 2).

NOTE. — Compounds with **con**, instead of taking the Dative, usually repeat **cum** and take the Ablative: **communicāre aliquid cum aliquō**, to share something with some one.

203. Double Construction. — **Aspergere**, to sprinkle, **circumdare**, to surround, and **dōnāre**, to give, have a double construction, as follows: —

aspergit āram sanguine , he sprinkles the altar with blood.	aspergit ārae sanguinem , he sprinkles blood on the altar.
circumdat urbī mūrū , he places a wall around the city.	circumdat urbem mūrō , he encircles the city with a wall.
dōnat filiō dīvitias , he bestows riches on his son.	dōnat filium dīvitias , he endows his son with riches.

204. Verbs that have different constructions with different meanings: —

metuere and timēre alicui (mihi) (libertātī) dē rē publicā	} to fear for.	metuere and timēre aliquem (aliquid) aliquid ab aliquō	} to fear.
cōnsūlere	{	rēi publicae , to provide for the state. aliquem , to consult some one. in aliquem graviter , to take harsh measures against some one.	}
prōspicere and prōvidēre	{	rēi publicae , to provide for the state. aliquid , to provide something.	}
cavēre	{	alicui , to provide safety for some one. aliquid , to shun something.	}

205. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.—The Dative of the Person or the Thing is used as the indirect object of many intransitive verbs, some of the most common of which mean *to help, hinder, hurt, agree to, differ with, pity, pardon, forgive, oppose, lie in wait for, envy, be angry with, rail at, threaten, command, obey, yield to, oppose, heal, spare, restrain oneself, please, displease, persuade, trust, distrust*: *civitatī persuāsīt*, Caes. B. G. I. 2, *he persuaded the state*; *Allobrogibus imperāvit*, Caes. B. G. I. 28, *he ordered the Allobroges*; *philosophia medētur animīs*, *philosophy heals the mind*; *probus invidet nēminī*, *a good man envies no one*.

Exceptions: *aequāre, decēre, dēficere, iuvāre, iubēre, vetāre*, take the Accusative.

NOTE.—In the passive these verbs are used impersonally: *invidētur mihi*, *I am envied*.

DATIVE OF PURPOSE, END, OR SERVICE

206. This Dative has a predicative use, is in the singular number, and is semi-abstract in its nature. It occurs most usually with some form of *esse*, and is generally accompanied by a second Dative of the person for whom something is, or is done: *pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram*, Caes. B. G. I. 33, *and promised that that matter would be a care to him*; *quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant*, Caes. B. G. I. 18, *which the Aeduians had sent for an aid to Caesar*.

DATIVE OF THE AGENT

207. The Dative denotes Agency. This is the regular construction with the Gerund or Gerundive: *Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda*, Caes. B. G. II. 20, *Caesar had to do everything at one time*.

NOTES. — 1. The Ablative with **ā** sometimes takes the place of this Dative, but only to avoid ambiguity: **militibus ab imperātōre cōsulendum est**, *the interests of the soldiers must be consulted by the general*.

2. In poetry, and rarely in prose, a Dative of the Agent is often found with the compound tenses of the passive voice: **mihi hōc prōvīsum est**, *this has been foreseen by me*.

DATIVE OF REFERENCE

208. The Dative of Reference points out the person in whose eyes the statement is true, or to whom the statement refers, or who feels an interest in the statement, or whose attention is called to it: **versātur mihi ante oculōs aspectus Cethēgī**, Cic. Cat. IV. 11. 16, *there is ever before my eyes the sight of Cethegus*.

NOTE. — This Dative does not modify a single word, but the sentence.

209. The **Ethical Dative** is found only with the personal pronoun, and the connection of the Dative with the rest of the sentence is very slight: **Tongilium mihi ēdūxit**, Cic. Cat. II. 4. 23, *he has led out my Tongilius*.

(Compare this with our English colloquialism, “There’s a fine horse *for you*.”)

210. Dative of the Point of View.

Local: **Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniam euntibus nōn longē ab urbe est**, *Volsci, a community which is not far from the city to those going (= as one goes) toward Campania*.

Mental: **vērē aestimantī**, L. 37. 58. 8, *to one judging truly*.

NOTE. — The Participle is the form commonly found with this Dative.

211. Dative of Separation.—Where the idea of Personal Interest is implied, the Dative occasionally takes the place of an Ablative: *scūtō ab novissimis ūnī mīlitī dētractō*, Caes. B. G. II. 25, *having snatched a shield from a soldier on the rear*. This may be considered as Indirect Object also.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION

212. Esse with the Dative conveys the idea of Possession: *cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī ēiusmodī congressus erat*, Caes. B. G. III. 13, *with these ships our fleet had such an encounter*.

NOTES. — 1. If the possession of qualities is affirmed, the Ablative of Quality, *inesse* with the Dative, or *in* with the Ablative, is used: *Cicerō māximā ēloquentiā est*; *Cicerōnī māxima ēloquentia inest*; *māxima in Cicerōne ēloquentia est*, *Cicero possesses very great eloquence*.

2. With *nōmen* the proper name is usually made to agree with the Dative rather than with *nōmen*: *mihi Cicerōnī nōmen est*, *my name is Cicero*.

DATIVE OF PLACE

213. The Place Towards Which Motion is Directed is sometimes expressed in poetry by the Dative: *lābentur flūmina pontō*, *rivers will glide on to the sea*.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

214. The Dative is used with adjectives meaning *near*, *equal*, *like*, *unlike*, *friendly*, *hostile*, and, in general, with adjectives having a meaning similar to that of the verbs in 205. These adjectives are usually united with some tense of *esse*: *hōc bellum nōn minus victōribus quam victīs exitiōsum fuit*, *this war was no less destructive to the victors than to the vanquished*; *quī proximī Rēmīs erant*, Caes.

B. G. II. 12, *who were next to the Remi*; **māximē plēbī acceptus fuit**, Caes. B. G. I. 3, *he was very pleasing to the people* (= very popular).

NOTES. — 1. For **propius** and **proximus** with the Accusative, see 258. 2.

2. **Amīcus**, **inimīcus**, and **familiāris**, in the Positive and Superlative, are used as substantives modified by a possessive pronoun or a Genitive: **meus amīcissimus**, *my dearest friend*; **Cicerōnis familiārēs**, *Cicero's intimates*. So **pār**, **proprius**, **similis**.

3. Instead of adjectives denoting Friendliness, followed by the Dative, **ergā** with the Accusative may be used: **vestra ergā mē voluntās**, Cic. Cat. IV. 1. 5, *your kindly feeling towards me*. Instead of adjectives denoting Unfriendliness, followed by the Dative, **adversus**, **ad**, or **in** with the Accusative may be used: **adversus ea respondēbō**, *to that I will reply*. Also **ad haec respondēbō**, and **hīs respondēbō**, *to this I will reply*.

4. **Ūtilis**, *useful*, **inūtilis**, *useless*, **aptus**, *fit*, **idōneus**, *suitable*, **necessārius**, *necessary*, and **parātus**, *ready*, may take the Dative, or the Accusative with **ad**: **locus castrīs (ad castra) idōneus**, *a place suitable for a camp*.

THE GENITIVE

215. The Genitive is the case of the Complement, and is akin to the adjective. It is used chiefly as the complement of nouns and adjectives, less often as the complement of verbs.

I. THE GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

216. **Subjective and Objective Genitive.** — 1. When the noun which the Genitive limits contains the idea of an action, the Genitive may be Subjective; that is, Active; or Objective; that is, Passive. If the Genitive denotes the subject of the action, it is called the Subjective Genitive; if it denotes the object of the action, it is called the Objective Genitive.

Subjective: **Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit**, *Caes. B. G. I. 44, Ariovistus replied briefly to Caesar's demands (the demands made by Caesar).*

Objective: **Cupiditās glōriae**, *desire of glory.*

(In this sentence **glōriae** denotes the object of the desire).

Pro veteribus Helvētiorum iniuriis populī Rōmānī, *Caes. B. G. I. 30, in return for the ancient wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians on the Roman people (lit. in return for the ancient injuries of the Helvetians of the Roman people).*

As in the above sentence, the Subjective Genitive precedes the Objective.

2. Instead of the Objective Genitive of persons, **in, ergā, adversus** with the Accusative of the person are generally used, particularly when the other noun is accompanied by a possessive pronoun or by a Subjective Genitive: **amōrem in patrem tuum**, *Cic. Sull. 12. 16, love for your father.*

3. Instead of the Subjective Genitive of personal pronouns, the possessive pronoun is used, agreeing in case with the modified noun: **nōn est ista mea culpa, sed temporum**, *Cic. Cat. II. 3. 5, it is not my fault, but that of the times.*

4. Possessive Pronouns are sometimes used for Objective Genitives: **ullam rei publicae partem cum suā minimā invidiā auderet attingere?** *Cic. Sest. 49. 11. (Who) . . . would have dared to take any part in politics at the risk of the very least unpopularity to himself?*

5. **Nostri** and **vestri** are objective forms; **nostrum** and **vestrum**, partitive forms.

217. Genitive of Possession. — 1. The Genitive denotes possession: **in castris Helvētiorum**, *Caes. B. G. I. 29, in the camp of the Helvetians.*

2. The Genitive is used with *esse*, *ferī*, *putārī*, etc., to indicate one to whom something belongs or of whom something is a characteristic. These Genitives are often used as predicates: *Gallia est Ariovistī*, *Gaul belongs to Ariovistus*; *adulēscētis est māiōrēs nātū reverērī*, *it is the duty of a young man to respect his elders*; *ūnum genus est eōrum*, Cic. Cat. II. 18. 12, *one class consists of those*.

NOTES. — 1. Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is used: *haec erant mea*, *these things were mine*.

2. Instead of the neuter of the predicate adjective, we regularly use the Genitive of the masculine of the Third Declension adjective of one ending: *sapientis est*, *it is wise*; *it is characteristic of a wise man*.

218. 1. The Genitive occurs with the Ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, which are used as prepositions and follow their nouns. The Ablative of the possessive pronoun with *causā* takes the place of the Genitive of the personal pronouns: *laudis causā (grātiā)*, *for the sake of praise*; *meā causā*, *for my sake*; *rei frūmentāriae commēātūque causā*, Caes. B. G. I. 39, *for the sake of provisions and supplies*.

2. The indeclinable *īnstar* is also used with a Genitive: (*aedificant*) *īnstar montis equum*, Verg. Aen. II. 15, *they build a horse as large as a mountain*.

219. **Appositive Genitive.** — The Appositive Genitive or Genitive of Definition has almost the force of an appositive: *vitium tarditātis*, *the fault of slowness*.

220. **Genitive of Origin.** — The Genitive denotes Origin: *filia Cicerōnis*, *the daughter of Cicero*.

221. **The Genitive of Material.** — The Genitive denotes that of which a thing consists: *acervus farri*, *a heap of spelt*.

222. Genitive of Quality. — *Quality* is expressed by the Genitive. This Genitive is found in the singular and has an attribute, usually *māgnus*, *māximus*, *summus*, *tantus*: *vir māgnae sapientiae*, *a man of great wisdom*; *habēmus enim hūiuscemodī senātūs cōsultum*, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 12, *for we have the senate's decree of this very nature*.

223. Genitive of Measure. — The Genitive indicates Number, Measure, Time, Space: *trīduī via*, Caes. B. G. I. 38, *a journey of three days*.

224. Genitive of Price or Value. — General or Indefinite Price or Value is expressed by the Genitive, used with *aestimāre*, *facere*, *putāre*, etc. The most common of these Genitives are *māgnī*, *plūris*, *plūrimī*, *māximī*, *parvī*, *minōris*, *minimī*, *quantī*, *tantī*, *tantīdem*, *permāgnī*, *nihilī*: *quantī ēmistī*? *at what price did you buy?* *parvī existimō*, *little do I care*.

NOTE. — All forms of the Genitive of Quality are common in the predicate: *vir erat prīscae sevērītātis*, *he was a man of old-fashioned sternness*.

For the Ablative of Quality, see 245.

225. Partitive Genitive. — The Genitive indicates the whole of which a part is made prominent. This Genitive is modified: —

1. By nouns of quantity and measure; as *pars*, *part*; *numerus*, *number*; *cōpia*, *abundance*; *multitūdō*, *multitude*; *modius*, *measure*; *pondus*, *weight*: *multitūdō hominum*, *a multitude of men*; . . . *quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae*, Caes. B. G. I. 12, *which part of the Helvetian state*.

2. By words used as neuter substantives, if they are in the Nominative, or in the Accusative without a preposi-

tion; as **tantum**, **quantum**, **aliquantum**, **multum**, **plūs**, **plūrium**, **paulum**, **minus**, **minimum**, **satis**, **parum**, **nihil**, **hōc**, **id**, **illud**, **istud**, **idem**, **quid**, etc.: **virtūs nihil expetit praemiī**, *virtue demands no reward*; **satis eloquentiae**, *enough eloquence*; . . . **minus dubitātiōnis**, *Caes. B. G. I. 14, less of doubt*.

3. By Comparatives and Superlatives; also the Superlatives of adverbs: **māior frātrum**, *the elder of the brothers*; **māximē omnium laudandus**, *most greatly to be praised among all*.

4. By ordinals, and by pronouns like **uter**, **alter**, **neuter**, **uterque**, **ūllus**, **nūllus**, **nēmō**, **quisquam**, **quis**, **quicumque**, **quisquis**, **quisque**, **nōnnūllī**, **multī**, **paucī**, **quotus quisque**: . . . **cum sciās esse hōrum nēminem**, *Cic. Cat. I. 15. 23, since you know that there is no one of these*.

5. By adverbs of place and degree: **ubinam gentium sumus**? *Cic. Cat. I. 9, where in the world are we?* **eō adrogantiae**, *to that pitch of presumption*.

NOTES. — 1. Adjectives of the Second Declension are found in the Partitive Genitive, but those of the third are attracted into the case of the modifying word: **aliquid novī**, *something new*; but **aliquid ūtile**, *something useful*.

2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive the Ablative with **ex** or **dē** may be used to indicate Selection. This is regularly so with **quīdam**, and often with **ūnus** and other cardinals: **ūnum ē multīs**, *one of many*; **quīdam ex militibus**, *some of the soldiers*; **videō dē istīs, quī sē populārēs habērī volunt, abesse nōn nēminem**, *Cic. Cat. IV. 10. 13, I see that of those who wish to be considered democratic some are absent*.

3. Where both words cover the same ground, and where there is no contrast between the whole and the part, the attributive is found: **multī hostēs**, *many of the enemy*.

4. When modified by **uterque** the pronoun is put in the Genitive; the substantive, in the same case as **uterque**: **uterque hōrum**, *each of these*; **uterque cōsul**, *each consul*.

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

226. 1. The Objective Genitive is used with adjectives that denote Desire, Experience, Fulness, Knowledge, Memory, Participation, Power, and their contraries; as *avidus, cupidus, studiōsus; cōnscius, gnārus, perītus; in-scius, Ignārus, imperītus; adfinis, particeps, compos, plēnus; expers, inops; memor, immemor: . . . dīxissetque sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum studiōsum fuisse*, Cic. Cat. III. 10. 10, *and had said that he had always been very fond of good cutlery.*

2. The Objective Genitive is used with some Present Participles of transitive verbs, if they denote a permanent quality: *homō fugiēns labōris, a man shirking labor* (regularly); but *homō fugiēns labōrem*, referring to a particular case.

3. Instead of the Dative, the Genitive is often used
With *superstes*, *surviving*.

With *proprius*, *own*; *commūnis*, *common*; *sacer*, *sacred*.

With *similis* and *dissimilis*, always the Genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*.

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

227. 1. Verbs of Remembering, Reminding, and Forgetting take the Genitive, particularly *meminisse*, *to bear in mind*; *reminiscī*, *to remember*; *oblīviscī*, *to forget*: *mortuōrum memini*, *I keep in mind the dead*; *praeteritōrum memini*, *I keep in mind the past*; . . . *oblītī salutis meae*, Cic. Cat. IV. 1. 6, *forgetting my safety*.

2. *Memini*, *I recall*, takes the Accusative: *Caesarem memini*, *I recall Caesar*.

3. *Recordārī*, *to call to mind*, takes *ā* with the Ablative of the person, and usually has the Accusative of the

thing: *recordor aliquid dē Catōne, I call to mind something of Cato.*

4. **Admoneō, commoneō, commonefaciō, I remind, I impress on,** take the Accusative of the person, while the thing is expressed by the Ablative with *dē*, or, less commonly, by the Genitive: *nōs tantī virī rēs admonuit, the matter reminded us of so great a man; dē quō vōs admonuī, I reminded you of this.*

5. The Genitive is used with the phrase *mihi in mentem venīre*: *venit mihi Platōnis in mentem, I thought of Plato.*

6. With verbs of Remembering, Reminding, Forgetting, the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective is in the Accusative: *multa meminī, I remember many things; tē haec admonēbō, I will admonish you of this.*

228. Verbs of Judicial Action. — Verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning, and Convicting take the Genitive of the Crime and the Ablative of the Penalty. The most common of these verbs are *accūsāre, arguere, arcessere, convincere, damnāre, absolvere, and reum facere*: *Miltiadēs, capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est, Miltiades, though acquitted of a capital offense, was fined (lit. mulcted in money).*

NOTE. — Note particularly the phrases

postulāre dē repetundīs, to proceed against for extortion.

accūsāre and damnāre dē venēficiīs, to accuse of (to condemn for) poisoning.

accūsāre and damnāre inter sicāriōs, to accuse of (to convict of) murder.

accūsāre dē vī, to accuse of assault.

vōtī damnātus, having attained one's prayer.

229. Verbs of Emotion. — The Impersonals *miseret, it moves to pity, paenitet, it repents, piget, it wearies, pudet,*

it shames, taedet, it tires, and the personal verb *misereor*, *I pity*, take the Genitive of the person towards whom or the thing towards which the feeling is directed and the Accusative of the person who feels: *mē pudet stultitiae*, *I am ashamed of my folly*; *hōc mē pudet*, *I am ashamed of this*; *mē tamen meōrum factōrum atque cōnsiliōrum numquam, patrēs cōscriptī, paenitēbit*, Cic. Cat. IV. 20. 8, *and yet, Conscript Fathers, never shall it repent me of my deeds and plans*; *miserēre nostrī*, *pity us*.

NOTES.—1. *Pudet* also takes the Genitive of the person before whom one feels ashamed: *pudet mē deōrum hominumque*, *I am ashamed before gods and men*.

2. A demonstrative or a relative pronoun may be used as the subject: *nōn tē haec pudent?* *Do not these things shame you?*

230. 1. *Interest* and *rēfert*.—*Interest* takes a Genitive of the person concerned; seldom of the thing: *Caesaris interest*, *it is of importance to Caesar*.

2. The Ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun is used instead of the Genitive of the personal pronoun: *nunc, patrēs cōscriptī, ego meā videō quid intersit*, Cic. Cat. IV. 9. 1, *now, Conscript Fathers, I see what is to my interest*.

3. The Measure of Concern or Interest is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Price: *Caesaris interest māximē (plūrimum) (māximī)*, *it concerns Caesar very greatly*.

4. The Object of Concern is expressed by a neuter pronoun as a subject, by an Infinitive (or Accusative and Infinitive), by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive, by an indirect question: *hōc meā interest*, *this concerns me*; *interest omnium rēctē facere*, *it is of importance to all to do right*; *interest bonōrum nē improbī cōnsulem faciant*, *it is of inter-*

est to the loyal that the disloyal do not make a consul; meā interest quid dē mē amīcī loquantur, it is of importance to me what my friends say about me.

NOTE. — Apposition is expressed by a relative clause.

5. *Rēfert* does not take the Genitive of the person, but in other respects has the same construction as *interest*.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS THAT USUALLY TAKE THE ABLATIVE

231. *Potior* governs the Genitive in the phrase *potiri rērum, to control matters*.

Implēre, complēre, egēre occasionally take the Genitive, while with *indigēre* it is the more common construction: *cum complētus iam mercātōrum carcer esset*, Cic. II. Verr. 5. 147, *when the prison had already been filled with merchants*.

THE ABLATIVE

232. The Ablative has three fundamental uses, denoting —

1. The Place From Which (Ablative of Source or Origin, Ablative of Material, Ablative of Separation, Ablative of Specification, Ablative of Comparison).
2. The Place Where (Ablative of Place, Ablative of Time).
3. The Thing With Which (Ablative of Accompaniment, Ablative of Manner, Ablative of Quality, Ablative of Means, Ablative of Measure, Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want, Ablative of Price, Ablative with *opus*, Ablative with Verbs, Ablative of Cause).

ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH

233. 1. Place From Which is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition: **dē finibus suis**, *Caes. B. G. I. 2, from their own boundaries*; **ēgredere aliquandō ex urbe**, *Cic. Cat. I. 10. 2, at last depart from the city*.

2. The preposition is omitted with names of towns and small islands, and with **domō**, *from home*, **humō**, *from the ground*, and **rūre**, *from the country*: **Rōmā rediī**, *I returned from Rome*; **domō exire nōlunt**, *they are unwilling to leave home*. **Relinquō** takes the Accusative.

3. Even with names of towns, the preposition is regularly used to express *distance from*, or to indicate *from the neighborhood of*: **iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur**, *Caes. B. G. VII. 59, now Caesar was heard to have departed from the neighborhood of Gergovia*; **cum mīlia passuum circiter XXX ab Gergoviā abesset**, *Caes. B. G. VII. 38, when he was about thirty miles from Gergovia*.

NOTES. — **1.** If a noun, such as **urbs** or **oppidum**, is in apposition with the name of a town from which motion takes place, it takes a preposition with it: **Cirtā ex oppidō Africae**, *from Cirta, a town of Africa*.

2. In poetry, the place from which motion takes place may be expressed by the Ablative without a preposition, even if it is not the name of a town: **frātrēs Lyciā missōs occīdit**, *he slays the brothers sent from Lycia*.

234. 1. Ablative of Source or Origin. — With Participles denoting birth (**ēditus**, **genitus**, **nātus**, **ortus**, etc.) the Ablative alone (rarely with **ex**) is used to designate parentage or immediate descent; the Ablative with **ab**, to designate remote descent: **Mercurius Māiā nātus est**, *Mercury was descended from Maia*; **amplissimō genere nātus**, *descended from a most illustrious line*; **Belgae sunt ortī ab Germānīs**, *the Belgians are of German descent*.

2. With pronouns a preposition is used: **ex nōbīs nātōs līberōs appellāmus**, *we call those born of us children.*

235. Ablative of Material.—Material is expressed by the Ablative with **ex** (sometimes **dē**) or by an adjective: **cīvica corōna fit ē fronde querneā**, *the civic crown is made of oak leaves*; **nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore**, Caes. B. G. III. 13, *ships made entirely of oak*; **triumphālēs corōnae sunt aureae**, *triumphal crowns are of gold.*

236. Ablative of Separation.—The following verbs and their compounds regularly take the Ablative:—

1. **pellere, dēpellere, expellere, movēre, dēicere, dētur-bāre, cēdere, dēcēdere, excēdere**: **Caesar pellit Mārcum ex cīvitate**, *Caesar drives Marcus from the state.*

2. **arcēre, prohibēre, exclūdere, interclūdere, dēterrēre, abstinēre, dēsistere**: **arcet hostēs urbe**, *he keeps the enemy off from the city*; **dēfendit urbem ab hostibus**, *he defends the city from the enemy*; **rē frūmentāriā interclūdī**, Caes. B. G. I. 23, *to be cut off from provisions.*

3. **līberāre, levāre, solvere**: **līberat Ītaliā rēgibus**, *he frees Italy from kings.*

NOTES.—1. With these verbs the Person From Whom is expressed by the Ablative with **ab**. The Thing or Place From Which is expressed by the Ablative alone or by the Ablative with **ab, dē, ex**, under classes 1 and 2, while class 3 takes the simple Ablative.

2. The Place From Which gives the Point of View from which a thing is regarded: **ab superiōre parte**, Caes. B. G. II. 18, *on the upper part*; **ab summō**, Caes. B. G. II. 18, *from the summit*; **ā tergō**, *in the rear.*

3. The following verbs always take the Ablative with **ab**:—

1. Compounds of **dīs** and **sē**; as **dīstinguere** and **sēparāre**.

2. The verbs **abhorrēre, aliēnāre, abaliēnāre**.

237. 1. The Ablative of Separation is also used with verbs of Depriving and Lacking: **mīles oculīs privātus est**,

the soldier was deprived of his eyes; mortuī carent sēnsū, the dead are without feeling.

2. Adjectives of similar meaning also take this Ablative, but use **ab** with persons: **animus cūris vacuus**, *a mind free from cares*; **rēs pūblica nūda est ā magistrātibus**, *the state is without magistrates.*

NOTE.—**Indigeō** usually takes the Genitive: **arma, quōrum indigēbat**, *weapons, of which he stood in need.*

238. 1. Ablative of Specification.—This Ablative gives the precise point of view from which, or the feature in respect to which, a thing is considered: **animō ignāvus**, *coward of soul*; **hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt**, *Caes. B. G. I. 1, all these differ from one another in language, customs, laws.*

Common expressions are: **māior nātū**, *older*; **minor nātū**, *younger*; **meā sententiā**, *in my opinion.*

In like manner the Ablative is found in such phrases as **ex lēge**, *according to law*; **ex mōre**, *according to custom.*

2. This Ablative is also found with **dīgnus**, **indīgnus**, **dīgnārī** (Active, **dīgnum iūdicāre**): **dīgnus est poenā**, *he deserves punishment.*

239. 1. Ablative of Comparison.—The Ablative of Comparison is used with Comparatives instead of **quam** with the Nominative or the Accusative, but generally only after a negative or its equivalent: **pater filiō doctior est**, or **pater doctior est quam filius**, *the father is wiser than the son*; **nihil est amābilius virtūte**, *there is nothing more lovable than virtue*; **celeriusque omnium opīniōne**, *Caes. B. G. II. 3, and more quickly than the expectation of everybody*; **quid est in homine ratiōne dīvīnius?** *in man what is more divine than reason?*

2. The Ablative cannot take the place of **quam** with the Accusative, if the reference would be vague: **Germanī gra-**

viōrēs hostēs sustinuērunt quam Rōmānōs, *the Germans withstood worse enemies than the Romans (were).*

On the other hand, when the word giving the point of view is a negatived relative, the Ablative must be used: **Phīdīae simulācrīs, quibus nihil in illō genere perfectius vidēmus, cōgitāre tamen possumus pulchriōra**, *the statues of Phidias, than which we see nothing more perfect in their class, still allow us to imagine those that are more beautiful.*

3. **Plūs, minus, amplius, longius**, are often used for **plūs quam, minus quam**, etc.: **in eō proeliō occidērunt minus duo mīlia civium**, *in that battle fewer than two thousand citizens were slain.*

ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE

240. 1. **Ablative of Place.** — Place Where is expressed by the Ablative, usually with **in**: **in collibus**, *on the hills*; **in equō**, *on horseback*; **in ancorīs**, *at anchor*.

2. When the Ablative of Place contains also the added idea of Cause, Manner, or Means, no preposition is used: **bellō**, *in (and by means of) war*; **legiōnem silvis occultat**, *he conceals the legion in (and by means of) the woods*.

241. The following take the Ablative without a preposition: —

1. Names of Towns in the singular of the Third Declension and in the plural of all declensions: **hic Tībure nātus est, ille Gabiīs**, *one was born at Tibur, the other at Gabii*; **Athēnīs Cratippum audiēbam**, *I used to hear Cratippus at Athens*.

NOTE. — If **urbs** or **oppidum** is in apposition with the name of the town, **in** is used.

2. Substantives modified by **medius**, *middle*, **tōtus**, **cūctus**, **omnis**, *whole*: **carcer mediā urbe aedificātur**, *a prison is being built in the middle of the city*.

3. The expressions **terrā marique**, *by land and sea*; **dextrā**, *on the right*; **laevā**, **sinistrā**, *on the left*; **locō** (usually with an attributive), **locīs** (always with an attributive): **nōn nullīs locīs**, *in some places*; **parte**, **partibus** (always with an attribute): **utrāque parte Tiberis**, *on each side of the Tiber*; **regiōne** (with a modifier), *region*.

242. 1. In the singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where: **Rōmae rūs optās**, *at Rome you wish for the country*; **Lānuvii fuit**, *he was at Lanuvium*.

2. Other Locative forms are **domī**, *at home*; **humī**, *on the ground*; **bellī** and **mīlitiae**, in the phrases **domī mīlitiaeque**, *in peace and in war*, **bellī domique**, *at home and in the field*; and **rūrī**, *in the country*.

3. Appositions are regularly expressed by the Ablative with **in**: **mīlitēs Albae cōstitērunt in urbe opportūnā**, *the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town*.

243. 1. **Ablative of Time**. — Time When or Within Which is expressed by the Ablative of all words that really denote time, such as **tempus**, **aetās**, **pūctum temporis**, **hōra**, **diēs**, **mēnsis**, **annus**, **saeculum**, **vēr**, **aestās**, **nox**, **vigilia**: **diē cōstitūtā**, *Caes. B. G. I. 4, on the appointed day*.

2. Other words, as well as those denoting the time of life, if accompanied by a modifier, are put in the Ablative alone; if not modified, in the Ablative with **in**: **bellō Pānicō secundō**, *in the Second Punic War*, but **in bellō**, *in war*; **primā pueritiā**, *in early youth*, but **in pueritiā**, *in youth*.

3. Time within which: **hīs paucīs diēbus**, *Caes. B. G. III. 17, within these few days*; **proximā nocte**, *Caes. B. G. III. 18, on the next night*.

NOTE. — Occasionally the Ablative denotes Duration of Time: **hōc tōtō proeliō**, *Caes. B. G. I. 26, throughout this whole battle*.

ABLATIVE OF THE THING WITH WHICH

244. Ablative of Accompaniment. — Accompaniment is expressed by the Ablative, usually with **cum**: **cum omnibus cōpiis** Caes. B. G. II. 29, *with all their forces*.

The preposition is sometimes omitted in military phrases: **omnibus cōpiis**, *with all his forces*.

245. Ablative of Manner. — The Ablative of Manner answers the question "How?" and is used only of abstract nouns.

Nouns modified by adjectives are usually in the simple Ablative, while those not modified by adjectives usually take the Ablative with **cum**: **hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt**, Caes. B. G. III. 19, *thither they came at full speed*; **vēnit cum celeritāte**, *he came with speed*.

Words like **modō**, **pactō**, **ritū** do not take in.

246. Ablative of Quality or Descriptive Ablative. — The Ablative of Quality is used without a preposition, and always has a modifier: **integrīs vīribus militēs**, Caes. B. G. III. 19, *the soldiers with fresh strength*.

Instead of the Ablative of Quality, the Genitive may be used, usually in the singular, with the attributives **māgnus**, **tantus**, **summus**, **māximus**: **māgnī ponderis saxa**, Caes. B. G. II. 29, *stones of great weight*.

NOTE. — Expressions of Measure, Number, Time, Space, and Weight are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. In other cases, either the Genitive or the Ablative may be used.

247. 1. Ablative of Means. — The Means or Instrument is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition: **gladiō**, *with a sword*; **nāvibus trānsire**, Caes. B. G. IV. 17, *to cross on boats*.

2. The **Personal Agent** of a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with **ab**: **exspectantur ab his cōpiae**, *forces are awaited by them*; **quārum rērum ā nostris fieri nihil poterat**, *Caes. B. G. III. 4, none of which things could be done by our men.*

For the Dative of the Agent, see 207.

3. The Person by Means of Whom is expressed by the Accusative with **per**: **per speculātōrēs certior factus est**, *he was informed through (not by) scouts.*

NOTES. — 1. **Nitor**, *I support myself*, and **frētus**, *supported* (= relying on), take an Ablative of Means.

2. Note the following peculiar phrases: **proficiscī pedibus**, *to go on foot*; **laccessunt proeliō**, *they harass with strife*; **vincunt proeliō**, *they conquer in strife*; **sanguine pluisse senātui nuntiātum est**, *Cic. Div. II. 58, it was reported to the senate that it had rained blood*; **nāvi vehī**, *to sail*; **equō vehī**, *to ride*; **in equō**, *on horseback*; **ex equō pugnāre**, *to fight on horseback.*

248. The **Ablative of Measure or Degree of Difference** answers the question "By How Much?" It precedes Comparatives and comparative ideas; as **ante**, **post**, **īfrā**, **suprā**, **citrā**, **ūltrā**, **mālō**, **antecellō**, **praestō**, **superō**. Examples of these Ablatives are **quō**, **eō**, **quantō**, **tantō**, **multō**, **aliquantō**, **paulō**, **nihilō**: **biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit**, *Caes. B. G. I. 47, two days afterward, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to Caesar.*

249. Time Before or After is expressed by the Ablative of Measure with a cardinal or ordinal numeral with **ante** or **post**: **tribus annīs ante (post)**, or **tribus ante (post) annīs**, *three years before (after)*; **aliquot diēbus ante**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 9, some days before*; **paucīs ante diēbus**, *Caes. B. G. I. 18, a few days before*; **faciam idem, quod vīginti annīs ante Balbus fēcit**, *I shall do the same thing that Balbus did twenty years before.*

REMARK.—1. Note the phrases **multō, nōn multō, nōn ita multō, paulō, brevī, aliquantō**, with **ante** or **post**.

2. In answer to the question "How long before the present time?" we find the Ablative with the pronoun **hic**, or the Accusative with **abhinc**: **his quattuor decem annis**, or **abhinc annōs quattuor decem**, *fourteen years ago*.

250. Ablative with Verbs of Filling.—The Ablative is used with verbs of Filling, Abounding, and Equipping, and with a few adjectives of similar meaning: **Arion nōminis suī fāmā omnēs terrās implēverat**, *Arion had filled all lands with the glory of his name*; **Germānia rīvīs flūminibusque abundat**, *Germany abounds in streams and rivers*; **homō praeditus auctōritāte**, *a man endowed with authority*.

251. Ablative of Price.—The Ablative is also used with verbs of Buying, Selling, Costing, Hiring, Renting, to indicate Price, whether definite or indefinite: **multō sanguine Poenīs victōria stetit**, *the victory cost the Carthaginians much blood*; **vectigālia parvō pretiō redēpta**, *Caes. B. G. I. 18, taxes purchased at a small price*.

252. 1. This Ablative is used with **opus est**, *there is need*; the person feeling the necessity is put in the Dative: **auctōritāte tuā nobīs opus est**, *we need your influence*.

2. If the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or an adjective, **opus est** is construed personally: **multa opus sunt**, *many things are needful*.

3. If the thing is expressed by a verb, the Infinitive or the Accusative with the Infinitive is used: **quid opus est tam multa dicere?** *what is the need of saying so much?*

253. Ablative with Verbs.—Here belongs the Ablative with **utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor**, and their com-

pounds: **eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō**, Caes. B. G. I. 5, *adopting the same plan*; **utī omnibus in vitā commodīs ūnā cum iīs fru-antur**, Caes. B. G. III. 22, *that they enjoy with them all privileges in life*; **fungitur officiō**, *he discharges his duty*; **potiri imperiō**, Caes. B. G. I. 2, *to get control of the supreme power*; **vescitur cāseō**, *he feeds on cheese*.

254. Ablative of Cause. — The Ablative denotes Cause, chiefly with verbs of Emotion: **exercitus famē interiit**, *the army perished through hunger*; **fortūnā amici gaudeō**, *I rejoice in my friend's fortune*; **et eō magis**, Caes. B. G. I. 47, *and the more for this reason*; **hīs rēbus fiēbat**, Caes. B. G. I. 2, *because of these things it resulted*.

NOTES. — 1. **Ob** and **propter** with the Accusative are often used for the Ablative of Cause: **ob eās causās mūnitiōnī T. Labiēnum praeſecit**, *for these reasons he placed T. Labienus over the fortification*.

2. The Ablative with **prae** expresses a Preventing Cause: **prae gaudiō ubi sim nēsciō**, *I know not where I am for joy*.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

255. With an Ablative, a participle, an adjective, or another substantive may stand *predicatively*; that is, it may be expanded into a clause. This construction is commonly called the Ablative Absolute.

Usually this Ablative does not refer to the same person or thing as the subject or the object of the leading verb. It is grammatically absolute, but logically has a connection with the rest of the sentence. The Ablative Absolute may express Time, Cause, Condition, Concession, etc.

1. Time: **Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ad hostēs contendit**, Caes. B. G. V. 9, *the troops having been landed, and a suitable location for the camp secured, Caesar hastened against the enemy* (= *when the*

troops had been landed, or having landed the troops, etc.); ille Cicerōne cōsule mortuus est, he died during Cicero's consulship; praecēpit nē sē absente pūgnāret, he instructed him not to fight during his absence.

2. Cause: **exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar in Britanniam proficisci contendit**, Caes. B. G. IV. 20, *a small part of the summer being left (= as only a small part of the summer remained), Caesar hastened to set out for Britain.*

3. Condition: **quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant**, Caes. B. G. I. 9, *by which they could not go on account of the narrows, if the Sequani should be unwilling.*

4. Concession: **damnātus, quod sē vetante pūgnāset**, *condemned because he had fought, although forbidden by him.*

5. Attendant Circumstance: **Tarquinius bellum Rōmānīs intulit, auxilium eī ferente Porsenā**, *Tarquin made war on the Romans, Porsena lending him aid (= with the aid of Porsena).*

6. An Ablative of Attendant Circumstance, denoting *with, under circumstances of, under, at, etc.*, is sometimes explained as an Ablative Absolute with omission of the participle: **serēnō quoque caelō aliquandō tonat**, *sometimes also it thunders while the sky is clear; hanc urbem statuī malīs auspiciīs*, *I founded this city under unfavorable auspices.*

7. The Ablative Absolute may contain more than one of the above ideas: **acceptō aurō recessērunt**, *having received gold, they retired*, = not only 'when they had received,' but also 'because they received' it.

For the Ablative with prepositions, see 258.

THE NOMINATIVE

256. The Nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (see 171) and as a predicate (see 174).

THE VOCATIVE

257. The Vocative is used in address, either with or without an interjection: **M. Tulli**, *quid agis?* Cic. Cat. I. 27. 6, *Marcus Tullius, what are you doing?*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

258. Originally, prepositions were adverbs. Later, in connection with certain cases of nouns or in composition with verbs, they acquired a special use. The preposition and the verb are written in one word, but not the preposition and the noun. Many of these prepositions still retain an adverbial use also: *ante, previously*; *contrā, on the other hand*; *intrā, within*, etc.

1. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY

ad , to, at	iūxtā , close by
adversum } opposite, towards	ob , on account of
adversus }	penes , in the power of (a person)
ante , before	per , through
apud , with	post } after
circum } around	pōne }
circā }	praeter , except, past
circiter , about (of number)	prope , near
cis } on this side	propter , on account of
citrā }	secundum , according to, close
contrā , against	behind
ergā , towards (a person)	super } above
extrā , outside	suprā }
infrā , below	trāns , across
inter , between	ūltrā , beyond
intrā , within	versus , against (follows its case)

NOTE.—**Usque**, even, is often prefixed to **ad** and **trāns**: **usque trāns montem**, even across the mountain.

2. WORDS USED AS PREPOSITIONS

Propior, propius, proximus, proximē, are sometimes used with the Accusative. They take also the Dative, or the Ablative with **ab**.

Prīdiē, postrīdiē, clam, and usque may take the Accusative. **Prīdiē** and **postrīdiē** take the Genitive also.

3. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE ONLY

ā	} <i>from, by</i>	prae , <i>in front of, because of</i>
ab (before vowels or h)		prō , <i>instead of, before</i>
abs (only before tē)		sine , <i>without</i>
cōram , <i>in the presence of</i>		tenus (follows its case), <i>as far as</i> (may take the Genitive also)
cum , <i>with</i>	} <i>out of</i>	procul and simul are sometimes used as prepositions and take the Ablative
dē , <i>from, of</i>		
ē		
ex (before vowels or h)		
palam , <i>in the presence of</i>		

NOTE. — **Cum** is enclitic with the personal pronouns **mē, nōbīs, tē, vōbīs, sē**, and usually with the relative and interrogative pronoun: **nōbīscum; quibuscum** or **cum quibus**.

4. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE

In, in, on, into, until, and sub, under, up to, answering the question *Whither?* take the Accusative, and answering the question *Where?* take the Ablative.

THE VERB

259. Noun-Forms: Infinitive, Supine, Gerund.

Adjective-Forms: Gerundive, Present Active Participle, Future Active Participle, Perfect Participle Passive and Deponent.

THE INFINITIVE

260. Tenses of the Infinitive. — The tenses of the Infinitive denote time with reference to the verb on which they depend.

1. The Present Infinitive represents an act as *present* at the time of the verb on which it depends: **crēdō eum scribere**, *I believe that he is writing*; **crēdebam eum scribere**, *I believed that he was writing*.

NOTE. — **Dēbuit, oportuit, potuit**, with the Present (rarely the Perfect) Infinitive, represent the English *ought to have, should have, could have*: **oportuit venīre**, *he ought to have come*.

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as *prior* to the time of the verb on which it depends: **crēdō eum scripsisse**, *I believe that he has written*; **crēdebam eum scripsisse**, *I believed that he had written*.

3. The Future Infinitive represents an act as *subsequent* to the time of the verb on which it depends: **crēdō eum scriptūrum esse**, *I believe that he will write*; **crēdebam eum scriptūrum esse**, *I believed that he would write*.

4. **Periphrastic Future Infinitive.** — In the passive voice, or if the verb has no participial stem, **futūrum esse** or **fore** with an **ut** clause is used instead of the Future Infinitive: **Rōmānī spērābant fore ut Gallī vincerentur**, *the Romans hoped that the Gauls would be conquered*.

This is more common than the so-called Future Passive Infinitive, **-um irī**.

NOTE. — A Future Perfect Passive (or Deponent) is formed by the Perfect Participle with **fore**: **crēdō eam laudātam fore**, *I believe that she will have been praised*.

261. Uses. — The Infinitive is an indeclinable neuter substantive, and stands to the finite verb of the sentence

in the relation of Subject or Object. It also implies verbal action, and may have a subject of its own and an object in the same case as the object of the finite verb from which it is formed. It may also be modified by an adverb. It has two uses, — as Complement and in Indirect Discourse. In its complementary use the Infinitive has two tenses, the Present and the Perfect, referring to *continuous* and *completed* action, respectively. The Present is the tense generally used in the Complementary Infinitive. The Perfect also expresses attainment.

262. The Infinitive as Subject is found with *esse* and various impersonal verbs, such as *piget*, *puget*, *paenitet*, *taedet*; *decet*, *dēdecet*; *libet*, *licet*; *opus est*, *necesse est*, *oportet*; *dēlectat*, *iuvat*; *placet*, *displicet*; *praestat*; *interest* and *rēfert*: *māiōrī tamen partī placuit rei ēventum experīrī*, Caes. B. G. III. 3, *yet the majority determined to await the issue of the matter*.

263. The predicate noun used with the Subject Infinitive is in the Accusative: *senem ante tempus fierī miserum est*, *to become prematurely old is wretched*.

NOTE. — *Licet* allows the Dative of the Person: *mihi neglegentī esse nōn licet*, *I am not allowed to be negligent*.

264. The Infinitive as Object is used with auxiliary verbs denoting Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Resolve, Inclination, Continuance, End, etc., and their opposites, as *velle*, *mālle*, *cupere*; *posse*; *dēbēre*; *incipere*, *instituere*, *coepisse*; *pergere*, *perseverāre*; *dēsinere*, *dēsistere*, *intermittere*, *omittere*; *cōnārī*, *audēre*; *cunctārī*, *morārī*; *dubitāre*, *verērī*; *studēre*, *contendere*, *festināre*, *mātūrāre*, *properāre*; *neglegere*, *nōlle*, *nōn cūrāre*; *cōgitāre*, *in animō habēre*; *statuere*, *cōstituere*, *dēcernere*, *cōnsilium capere*, *animum indūcere*; *adsuēscere*,

adsuēfacere, cōnsuēscere, solēre; docēre, discere, and many others: saltāre didicērunt, Cic. Cat. II. 23. 28, they have learned to dance.

265. The Predicate Noun or Adjective with the Object Infinitive is in the Nominative: *omnēs student beātī fierī, all desire to become happy.*

ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE

266. The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative. If the Infinitive with a Subject Accusative takes a predicate noun, this noun also is in the Accusative: *Thalēs Mīlēsius aquam dīxit esse initium rērum, Cic. N. D. I. 10. 25, Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.*

The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the subject or the object of a sentence.

267. As Subject.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is found usually as the subject of impersonal verbs and expressions, such as *appāret, cōnstat, condūcit, expedit, prōdest, placet, displicet, oportet, interest; aequum, pār, iūstum est; apertum, manifestum, perspicuum est; fās, nefās, facinus, scelus est; fāma, opīniō, spēs est; necesse est, opus est; crēdibile, vērū, vērī simile est; honestum, pulchrum, turpe, indīgnū est; and impersonal passives of verbs of Thinking, Declaring, Perceiving, and the like, such as intellegitur, nūntiātum est, putandum est, etc.: quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, Caes. B. G. I. 1, which it is said that the Gauls hold; crēdibile est hominū causā factum esse mundum, it is likely that the world was made for the sake of men; lēgem brevem esse oportet, it is necessary that a law be brief; trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse, it is reported that Homer was blind.*

NOTE. — **Oportet** and **necesse est** may take the Subjunctive: **mē ipsum amēs oportet**, *it is necessary that you love me myself*; **tū mihi concēdās necesse est**, Cic. Sull. 68. 16, *it is necessary that you grant me*.

268. As Object. — Verbs of Saying, Thinking, Knowing, Perceiving, and the like (**verba sentiendī et dēclārandī**) take as their object the Accusative and Infinitive. Some of the most common verbs are **sentiō**, **animadvertō**, **audiō**, **videō**; **accipiō**, **comperiō**; **cōgnōscō**, **intellegō**; **cōgitō**; **arbitror**, **cēseō**, **crēdō**, **dūcō**, **existimō**, **iūdicō**, **opīnor**, **putō**; **spērō**, **suspīcor**; **sciō**, **nēsciō**, **īgnōrō**; **meminī**, **recordor**, **oblīvīscor**; **adfirmō**, **dīcō**, **negō**, **respondeō**, **scribō**; **fateor**, **dēclārō**, **dēmōnstrō**, **sīgnificō**; **simulō**, **dissimulō**; **narrō**, **trādō**; **doceō**, **ostendō**, and such phrases as **certiōrem faciō**, *inform*; **memoriā teneō**, *remember*; and **memoriae trādō** (**prōdō**), *hand down to memory*: **videō enim esse quōsdam**, Cic. Cat. I. 8. 8, *for I see that there are some*; **Ambarri Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre**, Caes. B. G. I. 11, *the Ambarri informed Caesar that they could not easily ward off the force of the enemy from their towns*.

269. If the verb of declaring has the force of an injunction, the Subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used: **orābant nē longius prōgrederētur**, Caes. B. G. IV. 11, *they asked that he would not advance further*.

NOTE. — But **iubeō** and **vetō** take the Present Infinitive.

270. Cēseō, meaning *to resolve, determine*, takes an **ut** clause: **senātus cēnsuit ut quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret Aeduōs dēfenderet**, Caes. B. G. I. 35, *the senate decided that whoever obtained the province of Gaul should defend the Aeduans*.

271. With *cernō*, *videō*, etc., the Participle is used to denote the immediate and actual action or condition of the object perceived: *vīdī puerōs magnō studiō ludentēs*, *I saw the boys playing with great zeal.*

272. Verbs of Hoping, Promising, and Swearing take the Accusative with the Future Infinitive, if the action is imminent. *Posse* and *velle* have a future force: *spērō tē ventūrum esse*, *I hope that you will come*; *spērō tē venīre posse*, *I hope you will be able to come.*

273. The Infinitive with the Accusative is the object:—

1. Of *nōlō*, *mālō*, *volō*, *cupiō*, when the subject of the Infinitive is not the same as the subject of the governing verb: *volō is esse quem tū mē esse voluistī*, *I wish to be such a man as you have wished me to be.*

But, even with the same subject, the Infinitive with the Accusative is used, if the fulfillment of the wish does not depend on the subject alone: *volō hōc facere*, *I wish to do this*; but *sapientem cīvem mē et esse et numerārī volō*, *I want to be and be considered a wise citizen.*

Volō and *nōlō* may take the Subjunctive: *quid vīs faciam?* *what do you wish me to do?*

2. Of *iubeō* and *vetō*. (See 269, Note.)

Where the name of the person on whom the command is laid is expressed, the Active Infinitive is used; where the name is omitted, the Passive Infinitive is used.

Accusative with Active Infinitive: *quemque domō cibāria efferre iubent*, *Caes. B. G. I. 5*, *they order each one to take supplies from home.*

Accusative with Passive Infinitive: *obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit*, *Caes. B. G. II. 5*, *he ordered hostages to be brought to him.*

3. Of *sinō* and *patior*: *Suēbī ad sē vīnum importārī omnīnō nōn sinunt*, Caes. B. G. IV. 2, *the Suevi do not allow wine to be imported to them at all*.

4. Of Verbs of Emotion, such as *gaudeō*, *doleō*, *mīror*, *admīror*, *indīgnor*, *queror*, *molestē* (*graviter*, *indīgnē*) *ferō*: *mīror tē ad mē nihil scribere*, *I wonder that you write me nothing*; *populī Rōmānī exercitum inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant*, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *they were vexed that the army of the Roman people was getting a foothold in Gaul*.

These verbs may also be followed by a *quod* clause, which is the only construction admissible with verbs of Praise, Censure, Thanks, etc.: *quod valēs gaudeō*, *I am glad that you are well*; *prīmum mihi grātiaē verbīs amplissimīs aguntur*, *quod . . . rēs pūblica māximīs periculīs sit liberāta*, Cic. Cat. III. 14. 7, *in the first place, thanks are rendered to me in most complimentary terms because the state has been saved from the greatest perils*.

5. The Infinitive may take the place of an Accusative with verbs that have two Accusatives: *filium equitāre docuī*, *I taught my son riding*.

274. Passive.—The Personal Construction (Nominative with Infinitive) is used with:—

1. The passive in all persons of *iubeō*, *vetō*, *sinō*, *videō*, *dīcō*, *putō*, *iūdicō*, *existimō*: *mīlitēs iubentur hōc facere*, *the soldiers are ordered to do this*; *tū vidēris beātus esse*, *you seem to be happy*; *lēctitāvisse Platōnem Dēmōsthenēs dīcitur*, *Demosthenes is said to have been in the habit of reading Plato*.

2. The passive of *ferunt*, *trādunt*, in the third person only: *quae nunc Samothrācia fertur*, Verg. Aen. VII. 208, *which is now called Samothrace*.

275. Exclamatory Infinitive. — The Accusative with the Infinitive, in an apparently absolute sense, is found in Exclamations or Questions expressing Sorrow, Scorn, Surprise, Disgust, etc., -ne often being attached to some word in the clause: **Tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vēxārī . . . !** Cic. Ep. Fam. XIV. 2. 13, *That you should be now thus harassed, my Terentia! Mēne inceptō dēsistere victam . . . ?* Verg. Aen. I. 37, (*am*) *I, baffled, (to) give up my undertaking?*

276. Historical Infinitive. — The Present Infinitive takes the place of an Imperfect Indicative, and has its subject in the Nominative: **hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere**, Caes. B. G. III. 4, *at a given signal, the enemy ran down from all directions.*

POETICAL USES

277. 1. The Infinitive is found with **parātus, suētus**, and their compounds, though these words usually take the gerund or gerundive construction in prose: **adsuēfactī superārī**, Caes. B. G. VI. 24, *used to being conquered.*

2. In poetry and late Latin many adjectives take the infinitive: **cantārī dignus**, Verg. Ecl. V. 54, *worthy to be sung.*

3. In poetry, the Infinitive may denote Purpose: **tempus est abire**, *it is time to go away.*

NOTE.—In most of these uses the infinitive is equivalent to a Dative of Purpose.

THE PARTICIPLE

278. The Participle partakes of the nature of the Adjective and of the Verb.

279. Tenses. — The time of the Participle is relative to the time of the verb on which it depends.

1. The Present Participle denotes action *contemporaneous* with that of the verb on which it depends: *tālia dīcentem Aenēān āversa tuētur*, Verg. Aen. IV. 362, *she gazes askance at Aeneas as he speaks thus*.

2. The Perfect Participle denotes action *prior* to that of the verb on which it depends: *hīs rēbus cōstitūtīs, in urbem redībō*, *when these matters shall have been settled, I shall return to the city*.

3. The Future Participle denotes an action *subsequent* to that of the verb on which it depends: *et sēsē medium iniēcit peritūrus in āgmen*, Verg. Aen. II. 408, *and, doomed to die, he flung himself into the midst of their ranks*.

280. The place of a Present Passive Participle is sometimes supplied by a Gerundive; in past time by *cum* with the Imperfect Subjunctive: *meō nōmine recitandō*, Cic. Att. IV. 1, *while my name was being read*.

281. The place of a Perfect Active Participle is supplied: —

1. By a clause, usually temporal: *quod ubi Caesar rescit*, Caes. B. G. I. 28, *when Caesar learned this (= Caesar having learned this)*.

2. By an Ablative Absolute (see 255): *alius aliā causā inlātā*, Caes. B. G. I. 39, *one, one cause being alleged; another, another (= one alleging, etc.)*.

3. By the Perfect Participle of a deponent verb: *Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus*, Caes. B. G. II. 5, *Caesar having encouraged the Remi*.

4. By a Perfect Passive Participle, agreeing with the object of the main verb: *hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxerant*, Caes. B. G. II. 8, *the enemy also had*

drawn up their forces, led out from the camp (= the enemy also, having led out their forces from the camp, had drawn them up, or the enemy had led out their forces from camp and drawn them up).

5. The Passive Participles of some deponents and semi-deponents may have the force of Present Participles: **secūtus hostēs**, *following the enemy*.

6. Sometimes the participle of a deponent has a passive force: **parum comitātus**, Cic. Cat. II. 4. 21, *slightly accompanied*.

USES OF THE PARTICIPLE

282. The Participle may modify a noun either attributively or predicatively.

Attributively: **in septentrionem et orientem solem**, Caes. B. G. I. 1, *towards the north and the rising sun*.

Predicatively: This participle may be expanded into a clause, and may denote Time, Concession, Cause, Condition, and various other relations.

TIME: **Aristīdēs patriā pulsus Lacedaemonem fūgit**, *when Aristides was banished from his native land, he fled to Sparta*.

CONCESSION: **Miltiadēs capitis absolūtus pecūniā multātus est**, *Miltiades, though acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money*.

CAUSE: **Catilīna, metuēns prōditionem, ex urbe excessit**, *Catiline, fearing betrayal, fled from the city*.

CONDITION: **damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur**, Caes. B. G. I. 4, *if condemned, the punishment that he should be burned with fire was to follow*.

If there is no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, the Ablative is used; this is the Ablative Absolute.

283. The Future Active Participle is regularly used in its Periphrastic Conjugation, but often stands independently when it denotes *purpose*; but this is rare in classical Latin: *dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostēs*, Verg. Aen. II. 511, *resolved on death, he rushes into the crowds of the enemy*.

284. With *habeō* and *teneō*. — *Habeō* (less often, *teneō*) takes the Perfect Passive Participle in the predicative construction with a force almost equivalent to that of a Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative, but the idea contained in the participle is regarded as a *possession*: *quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat*, Caes. B. G. I. 9, *he wished to have as many states as possible attached to him by reason of his kindness*; *cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs?* Cic. Cat. I. 1. 8, *do you not see that your conspiracy is now held fast bound in the knowledge of all these?*

285. Present Participle with Special Verbs. — 1. *Faciō*, *figō*, *indūcō*, *mihi prōpōnō*, take the Present Active Participle when they mean to *represent*, *introduce*, etc., in the language of history, description, or the stage: *mihi prōposuī régnantem Lentulum*, Cic. Cat. IV. 12. 17, *I have pictured to myself Lentulus as reigning*.

2. *Videō* and *audiō* may also take the Present Participle in a predicate sense: *audiō tē clāmantem*, *I hear you calling*.

286. A noun and a Perfect Passive Participle in agreement with it are often used where an abstract noun and a limiting Genitive would be expected: *ante urbem conditam*, *before the foundation of the city*. But if the action is progressive or prospective, the Gerundive must be used. See 295. 2.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

287. The Gerund is a verbal noun; that is, it is a noun which has verbal uses. It usually *governs* other nouns.

The Gerundive is a verbal adjective; that is, it is an adjective which has verbal uses. It *agrees with* nouns.

288. The Gerund. — The Gerund is declined as a neuter singular noun of the Second Declension, but has neither Nominative nor Vocative. The Infinitive takes the place of the Nominative; and also of the Accusative when the Accusative is used without a preposition.

CASE USES OF THE GERUND

289. Genitive. — 1. With nouns: *mīlitēs pūgnandī finem fēcērunt*, *the soldiers made an end of fighting.*

2. With adjectives: *cupidus sum scribendī*, *I am desirous of writing.*

3. With *causā* or *grātiā*, denoting Purpose: *Germanī ad Caesarem vēnērunt suī purgandī causā*, *Caes. B. G. IV. 13, the Germans came to Caesar for the purpose of exculpating themselves.*

NOTE. — The Genitive of the personal pronouns is also used with the Genitive of the Gerund, as in the last example.

290. Dative. — The Dative of the Gerund is used as a Dative of Purpose, and is found with a noun, an adjective, or a verb: *locus pūgnandō idōneus erat*, *the place was suitable for fighting.*

NOTE. — The Dative of the Gerund cannot take a direct object.

291. Accusative. — The Accusative of the Gerund is used only with prepositions, *ad* and *in* being the most common:

nostrī ad pūgnandum convēnērunt, *our men assembled to fight.*

NOTES. — 1. The Accusative of the Gerund does not admit of an object.

2. The Infinitive takes the place of the Accusative without a preposition: **dīcit vidēre esse crēdere**, *he says that seeing is believing.*

292. Ablative. — The Ablative is used with a preposition or alone. The Ablative without a preposition denotes Cause, Means, Instrument: **mīlitēs pūgnandō fortēs fiunt**, *soldiers are made brave by fighting*; **lēx est rēcta ratiō in iubendō et vetandō**, *law is right rule in ordering and forbidding.*

NOTE. — The Ablative with a preposition does not admit an object. **Sine** is never used with the Gerund. **Ab, dē, ex, in** are common.

293. Nominative. — The place of the Nominative of the Gerund is taken by the Infinitive: **vidēre est crēdere**, *seeing is believing.*

294. Object of a Gerund. — Only the Ablative (without a preposition) and the Genitive of the Gerund admit an object. This object is in the same case as the object of the verb would be.

THE GERUNDIVE

295. 1. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective of the First and Second Declensions. It denotes Obligation or Necessity. Occasionally it is used attributively, but generally predicatively.

Attributively: **bellum agendum**, *war to be waged.*

Predicatively: 1. With **esse**, forming the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: **Caesarī ūnō tempore omnia agenda**

erant, Caes. B. G. II. 20, *Caesar had to do everything at once*.

NOTE. — If the verb is intransitive, its Gerundive cannot have a personal use: **nōbīs eundum est**, *we must go*.

2. With **dō**, **trādō**, **mittō**, **prōpōnō**, **relinquō**, **concēdō**, **accipiō**, **suscipiō**, **permittō**, **locō**, **condūcō**, **attribuō**, the Gerundive denotes the End to be Attained or the Object Effected: **mūrōs reficiendōs cūrāvit**, *he saw to repairing the walls*.

THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

296. Usually the place of a transitive Gerund and its object is taken by a Gerundive and a noun with which the Gerundive agrees, the noun being put in the case of the Gerund which the Gerundive replaces.

Only transitive verbs and **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, and **potior** can be used in the Gerundive construction.

GERUND CONSTRUCTION

Caesar proelium committendī signum dedit, *Caesar gave the signal for beginning the battle*.

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

Caesar proeliī committendī signum dedit, *Caesar gave the signal for beginning the battle*.

297. The Gerundive construction is much more common than that of the Gerund with an object, and *must* be used, except in the Genitive, and in the Ablative without a preposition: **triumvirī colōniae dēdūcendae creātī sunt**, *a commission of three was appointed for leading out a colony* (here the Gerundive is used to avoid giving a direct object to the Dative of the Gerund); **quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant**, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *who had means for hiring men*; **in commemorandā calamitatē**, Caes. B. G. II.

28, *in recounting the misfortune*. (In these two examples the Gerundive is used to avoid giving a direct object to a Gerund used with a preposition.)

298. With neuter adjectives used as nouns, the Gerund is used to avoid ambiguity: *fēmina est studiōsa audiendī multa*, *the woman is desirous of hearing many things*.

299. In the Gerundive construction the Genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, have no distinction of gender or number: *multī prīncipēs cīvitātis Rōmā nōn tam suī cōservandī quam tuōrum cōnsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā profūgērunt*, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 18, *many leading men of the state fled from Rome, not so much for the purpose of saving themselves as for thwarting your plans*.

300. The Dative of the Gerundive construction is common in certain phrases that have become formulas, such as *studēre, operam dare, labōrem impertīre, praeesse, diem dicere, locum capere*; and in designations of official duty, such as *decemvirī lēgibus scribendīs, trēs virī colōniae dēdūcendae, agrīs adsignandīs*.

THE SUPINE

301. The **Former Supine**, or Supine in *-um*, is used with verbs of motion to denote the purpose of the motion. Occasionally it takes an object: *Aeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium*, Caes. B. G. I. 11, *the Aeduans send ambassadors to Caesar to ask aid*.

302. 1. The **Latter Supine**, or Supine in *-ū*, is an Ablative of Limitation, though by some explained as a Dative of Purpose. It is used with *fās, nefās, opus est, honestus, turpis, iūcundus, facilis, difficilis, incredibilis, mirābilis, optimus, utilis*, etc.

2. The Supines most commonly used are **audītū**, **vīsū**, **cōgnītū**, **dictū**, **factū**, **inventū**, **memorātū**: **miserābile vīsū**, Verg. Aen. I. 111, *miserable to be seen*.

NOTE. — **Facile cōgnītū**, *easy of understanding*, may be expressed as follows: 1. **rēs est facilis ad cōgnōscendum**; 2. **facile est rem cōgnōscere**; 3. **rēs facile cōgnōscitur**; 4. **rei cōgnitiō facilis est**.

TENSES

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

303. There are two things to be considered: —

The Time of the action, — Present, Past, Future.

The Kind of action, — Undefined, Continuous, Completed.

304. Principal and Historical Tenses. — Principal or Primary Tenses refer to the present or the future. They are the Present, Future, Perfect, and Future Perfect. Historical or Secondary Tenses refer to the past. They are the Imperfect, Historical Perfect or Aorist, and Pluperfect.

THE PRESENT

305. 1. Undefined: **dicō**, *I speak*.

2. Continuous: **dicō**, *I am speaking*.

3. Conative, denoting *attempted* action: **is ad plēbem P. Clōdium trādūcit**, Cic. Ep. Att. I. 18, *he tries to bring Publius Clodius over to the people*.

4. The Historical Present, used in lively narration for the Historical Perfect: **volat ille per āera māgnū**, Verg. Aen. I. 300, *he flew through the widespread air*.

5. The Gnomie Present denotes something that is always true: **virtūs et vitium inter sē differunt**, *virtue and vice differ from one another*.

6. With *iam diū, iam dūdum, iam pridem*, the Present moves back in time to a Perfect, but represents the action as still going on: *tē iam dūdum hortor*, Cic. Cat. I. 12. 31, *I have long been urging you.*

7. With the force of a Future immediately at hand: *cui rēs publica ā mē in manum trāditur*, Cic. Mur. III. 13, *into whose hand the state will be delivered by me.*

THE IMPERFECT

306. 1. The Imperfect denotes the continuance of an action in past time: *librum legēbam*, *I was reading a book.*

The Imperfect gives *details*, while the Historical Perfect sums up *results*: *Verrēs in Forum vēnit; ardēbant oculi; tōtō ex ore crūdēlitās ēminēbat*, Cic. Verr. V. 62. 161, *Verrēs came into the Forum; his eyes were blazing; cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

2. The Conative Imperfect denotes attempted, interrupted, intended, or expected action: *num dubitās id mē imperante facere, quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās?* Cic. Cat. I. 13. 34, *do you hesitate to do at my order what you were already trying to do of your own motion?*

3. The Imperfect denotes habitual or repeated action: *certior fiēbat*, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *he was informed* (from time to time).

4. The Imperfect with *iam diū, iam dūdum, iam pridem*, refers to an act continuing in past time, but which had begun some time before: *ego māgnū in rē publicā versārī furōrem iam pridem vidēbam*, Cic. Cat. IV. 6. 19, *I had long seen that a widespread madness was abroad in the state.*

5. The Imperfect denotes the beginning of an action: *quō nunc ibās?* *whither now were you about to go?*

THE PERFECT

307. The Perfect has two uses:—

1. It denotes an action completed in present time (Present Perfect): *urbem praeclāram statuī, mea moenia vīdī*, Verg. Aen. IV. 655, *I have built a noble city, I have seen my walls arise.*

NOTE.—The Perfects *cōnsuēvī, meminī, nōvī, ōdī*, emphasize the state that results from the completion of an act, and have the force of Presents: *I am accustomed, I remember, I know, I hate.*

2. It is the usual tense of narration (Historical Perfect or Aorist): *dēcrēvit quondam senātus*, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 1, *formerly the senate decreed.*

3. The Historical Perfect (rather than the Imperfect) is used with a negative, or with a definite number. With a negative it means *did not*, while the Imperfect means *would not*, implying resistance to pressure: *nōn dīxit*, *he did not speak*; *nōn dīcēbat*, *he would not speak.*

308. Poetical Uses of the Perfect.—1. Instantaneous action: *incubuēre marī*, Verg. Aen. I. 84, *at once they settle on the deep.*

2. A general truth (Gnomic Perfect): *nēmo repentē fuit turpissimus*, Juv., *no one suddenly becomes very base.*

THE PLUPERFECT

309. The Pluperfect denotes an action completed in past time: *Helvētīī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur*, Caes. B. G. I. 5, *the Helvetians attempted to do that which they had decided on.*

THE FUTURE

310. 1. Undefined: *dīcam*, *I shall speak.*

2. Continuous: *dīcam*, *I shall be speaking.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT

311. The Future Perfect denotes completed action in future time: *dixerō, I shall have spoken.*

Latin is much more exact than English in the use of the Future and the Future Perfect in subordinate clauses. If the leading verb is Future, and the subordinate verb is *contemporaneous* with it, the subordinate verb is Future also; but if the subordinate verb is *antecedent* to it, then this subordinate verb is in the Future Perfect.

REPEATED ACTION

312. When two actions are repeated *contemporaneously*, both are put in the Present, Imperfect, or Future Indicative; when one is repeated *before* the other, it is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect Indicative. So also with Indefinite Relatives *quisquis, quicumque*, etc.

EPISTOLARY TENSES

313. In letters, the writer often uses a tense as it will appear to the reader, and so uses the Imperfect and the Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Perfect: *ex itinere scribēbam, I am writing on the journey; ego cōstitueram venīre in Puteolānum, I have determined to go to my seat at Puteoli.*

The writer may also use the adverb of the reader; that is, he may use the adverb or the adverbial expression which would be appropriate to the reader: *prīdiē Idūs Febr. haec scripsī ante lūcem; eō diē apud Pompōnium . . . eram cēnātūrus*, Cic. Ep. Q. F. II. 3. 7, *I am writing this on the day before the Ides of February; I am this day to sup with Pomponius.* (In this sentence we should expect *hōc* for *eō*.)

In English the same principle appears in the use of *come* for *go*, the writer transferring himself to the time of the receiver. Thus the writer of a note may say, "I will *come* to your house to-morrow."

314. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

	Continuous	Completed
Principal or Primary	Present	Perfect
Historical or Secondary	Imperfect	Pluperfect

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

315. Principal (Primary) tenses are followed by Principal; Historical (Secondary) by Historical: that is, if the verb of the main clause is in a Principal tense, the verb of the dependent clause is in a Principal tense; if Historical, the verb of the dependent clause is Historical.

Principal Sequence:—

Cōnsul videt quid faciās, *the consul sees what you are doing.*

Cōnsul vidēbit quid faciās, *the consul will see what you are doing.*

Cōnsul viderit quid faciās, *the consul will have seen what you are doing.*

Cōnsul videt quid fēceris, *the consul sees what you have done.*

Cōnsul vidēbit quid fēceris, *the consul will see what you have done.*

Cōnsul viderit quid fēceris, *the consul will have seen what you have done.*

Cōnsul vīdit quid faciās, *the consul has seen what you are doing.* (Rare.)

Cōnsul vīdit quid fēceris, *the consul has seen what you have done.* (Rare.)

Historical Sequence:—

Cōnsul vidēbat quid facerēs, *the consul saw what you were doing.*

Cōnsul vīdit quid facerēs, *the consul has seen (saw) what you were doing.*

Cōnsul viderat quid facerēs, *the consul had seen what you were doing.*

Cōnsul vidēbat quid fēcissēs, *the consul saw what you had done.*

Cōnsul vīdit quid fēcissēs, *the consul has seen (saw) what you had done.*

Cōnsul viderat quid fēcissēs, *the consul had seen what you had done.*

PECULIARITIES OF SEQUENCE

316. 1. The Historical Present (**305. 4**) is usually considered a historical tense: **Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, ad exercitum proficīscitur**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 6, Caesar set out for the army that he might not meet with a very serious war.*

2. In Result clauses (with **ut, quī, quīn**) the Present and Perfect Subjunctive occasionally follow Historical tenses: **Alexander cum nūllō unquam hoste congressus est quem nōn vicerit**, *Alexander never fought with any enemy whom he did not conquer.* But after verbs of Happening, such as **accidit, fit, contigit**, the Imperfect is always used.

The Imperfect is regularly used to denote a result as *continuous or permanent*.

3. A clause depending on a dependent clause takes the secondary sequence, if the main verb will allow: **quod expectāvi iam sum adsecutus ut vōs omnēs factam esse apertē coniūratiōnem contrā rem publicam vidērētis**, Cic. Cat. II. 6. 1, *I have at last obtained what I have been waiting for; namely, that you should all see clearly that a conspiracy has been made against the state.*

4. The Perfect Indicative is usually historical: **ut urbi sine vestrō mōtū satis esset praesidiī cōsultum atque prōvīsum est**, Cic. Cat. II. 26. 3, *care has been taken and provision made that there should be ample guard for the city without any movement on your part.*

5. If a dependent Subjunctive gets its time from an Infinitive that depends on a verb of Saying or Thinking, the Subjunctive usually takes its tense from the verb of Saying or Thinking: **videor ostendere quālēs deī sint**, *I seem to show of what nature the gods are.*

6. But, with a Perfect Infinitive, the Subjunctive is usually put in the Imperfect or the Pluperfect: **videor ostendisse quālēs deī essent**, *I seem to have shown of what nature the gods are.* (In this sentence **ostendisse** represents a Perfect Indicative in the direct discourse, and is therefore followed by a secondary tense.)

REPRESENTATIONS OF THE FUTURE IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

317. 1. In sentences of Purpose, after verbs of Fearing, and when the point of time has already been designated, the Future of the Subjunctive is supplied as follows: By the Present or the Imperfect Subjunctive, according to the law of Sequence of Tenses: **valdē timeō nē patria pereat**, *I am very much afraid that our country will perish; Cicerō*

negat, sī nātūram ducem sequāmur, unquam nōs aberrātūrōs, *Cicero says that we shall never go astray, if we follow nature as a leader ;* **Cicerō negābat, sī nātūram ducem sequerēmur, unquam nōs aberrātūrōs,** *Cicero said that we would never go astray, if we followed nature as a leader.*

2. The Future Perfect is supplied by the Perfect or the Pluperfect Subjunctive, according to the law of Sequence of Tenses: **Caesar prōmittit sē hōc factūrum esse, ubi primum ad tē vēnerit,** *Caesar promises that he will do this as soon as he comes to you ;* **Caesar prōmisit sē hōc factūrum esse, ubi primum ad tē vēnisset,** *Caesar promised that he would do this as soon as he came to you.*

3. Where the Point of Time has not already been designated, or where it is to be made very definite, the Present or the Imperfect of the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive is used, if the verb has a Future Participle: **nōn dubitō quīn hanc rem cōfectūrus sis,** *I do not doubt that you will finish this affair ;* **nōn dubitābam quīn hanc rem cōfectūrus essēs,** *I did not doubt that you would finish this affair.*

This is most common in Indirect Discourse.

NOTE.—If the verb is in the Passive, or has no Future Participle, there is no regular Periphrastic form, but the Present or the Imperfect Subjunctive with **mox, iam, brevī, postea, statim** is used: **nōn dubitō quīn haec rēs brevī cōficiātur,** *I do not doubt that this will be finished in a little while.*

MOODS

THE MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

THE INDICATIVE

318. 1. The Indicative represents the statement as a reality, or asks a direct question: **puer librum legit,** *the boy reads the book ;* **legitne ?** *does he read ?*

2. The Indicative is used in expressions of Power, Possibility, Obligation, Necessity: **possum haec negāre**, *I might deny this*.

3. The Indicative is used with such Impersonal expressions as **deceat**, **longum est**, **aequum est**, etc.: **nōn aequum est haec negāre**, *it would not be just to deny this*.

THE IMPERATIVE (Negative **nē**)

319. The Imperative is the mood of Command, its tone ranging from positive injunction to piteous entreaty: **ēgre-dere ex urbe**, *depart from the city*. **Nē** in classic prose is found only with the Future Imperative: **hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepeli-tō nēve ūritō**, Cic. Leg. II. 23. 58, *thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city*; **nē percipite ea** (poetical), *do not notice that*.

320. Tenses. — There are two forms of the Imperative, the Present and the Future. The Present Imperative has only the second person; the Future has the second and the third. The Future differs from the Present only in being a little more formal, and is regularly used in laws and treaties. When it occurs elsewhere, the command is made in a formal or authoritative way.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

321. Hortatory Subjunctive (Negative **nē**). — The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in commands, exhortations, entreaties.

1. In the Present, first person plural: **moriāmur**, **et in media arma ruāmus**, Verg. Aen. II. 353, *let us die and dash into the thickest of the fray*.

2. In the Present, third person singular and plural: **exeant**, **proficiscantur**, **nē patiantur dēsideriō suī Catilinam**

miserum tābēscere! Cic. Cat. II. 6. 6, *let them depart, let them set forth, let them not permit poor Catiline to waste away through longing for his followers!* **illā sē iactet in aulā Aeolus!** Verg. Aen. I. 140, *let Aeolus strut in that court of his!*

3. Occasionally in the second person singular Present with an indefinite *you* (172. 5) as subject: **quidquid agis, prūdentē agās et respice finem**, *whatever you do, do prudently, and look to the end.*

4. Prohibition is expressed by the second person of the Perfect Subjunctive with **nē**: **nē hōc fēceris**, *don't do this.* Prohibition is also expressed by **nōlī** with the Infinitive or **cavē nē** with the Subjunctive: **nōlī hōc facere**, or **cavē nē hōc faciās**, *don't do this.*

322. Summary of Imperative Constructions. — 1. For the first person use the Present Subjunctive.

2. For the second person, if positive, use the Present Imperative; if negative, use **nē** with the Perfect Subjunctive, **nōlī** with the Present Infinitive, or **cavē nē** with the Subjunctive.

3. For the third person, if positive, use the Present Subjunctive; if negative, use **nē** with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive.

323. Concession. — Concession may be expressed by the Subjunctive, the Present for present time and the Perfect for past time: **antepōnātur Pompēius omnibus**, Cic. Cat. IV. 21. 21, *let Pompey be placed above all; dīxerit, suppose him to have said.*

324. The Deliberative Subjunctive is used in questions that express doubt or that are asked simply for effect, the Present referring to present time and the Imperfect to

past time. The negative is **nōn**: **quid agam?** *what must I do?* **quid agerem?** *what was I to do? what should I have done?*

NOTE. — In short questions the Indicative may be used. The test for a Deliberative Subjunctive is to see what the answer would be. If the answer would be an Imperative, use the Subjunctive in the question.

325. Optative Subjunctive (Negative **nē).** — The Subjunctive is used in Wishes: the Present and Perfect if the decision is in suspense; the Imperfect and Pluperfect if the decision is adverse; the Imperfect for present time and the Pluperfect for past time. The Present often takes **utinam**; the Imperfect and the Pluperfect always take **utinam**, or some other particle of wishing. The Perfect is rare: **utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs duint!** Cic. Cat. I. 22. 4, *may the immortal gods give you such a purpose!* **utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs darent!** *O that the immortal gods would give you such a purpose!* **utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs dedissent!** *would that the immortal gods had given you such a purpose!*

NOTE. — As an introduction to the Optative Subjunctive we have **velim**, **nōlim**, **mālim**, **vellem**, **nōllem**, **māllem**: **velim redeat**, *may he return*; **vellem rediasset!** *O that he had returned!*

326. Asseverations. — Similar to this is the Subjunctive in Asseverations: **ita mē dī ament**, **ut ego nunc nōn tam meā causā laetor quam illius**, *may the gods so love me as I now rejoice, not so much on my own account as his.*

327. Potential Subjunctive (Negative **nōn).** — The Potential Subjunctive represents the speaker's opinion as an *opinion*. The tone varies from surmise to certainty. This Subjunctive is sometimes taken as the apodosis of a con-

dition whose protasis is omitted, but usually there is no definite ellipsis. The Present or Perfect is used for present time; the Imperfect for past time: *hōc Ithacus velit*, Verg. Aen. II. 104, *the Ithacan would wish this*; *forsitan requirās*, Verg. Aen. II. 506, *perhaps you may ask*; *maesti militēs — crēderēs victōs — rediērunt in castra*, *the soldiers returned to the camp in sadness — you would have thought them conquered*.

NOTE.—The Imperfect is used of only a few verbs, such as *dīcere*, *crēdere*, *putāre*, *vidēre*, *cernere*, and only then with the imaginary *you* as a subject: *putārēs*, *one might have thought*.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

PURPOSE CLAUSES (FINAL CLAUSES)

328. Purpose Clauses express Purpose or Design. Their verb is in the Subjunctive. In pure Purpose Clauses, purpose is suggested by the introductory particle, *ut* affirmative and *nē* negative: *ede ut vivās*, *eat that you may live*; *hōc dīcō nē fallāris*, *I say this that you may not be deceived*.

For the Relative Clause of Purpose, see **382. 3**.

329. *Ut nē* is a more emphatic form for *nē*. Often, however, it is simply pleonastic: *senātus dēcernēbat ut ante, quam rogātiō lāta esset, nē quid agerētur*, Cic. Ep. Att. I. 14, *the senate decreed that nothing should be done before the bill was passed*.

330. If the second of two purpose clauses is negative, it is usually introduced by *nēve* (*neu*): *veniam ut tuae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retineās neu perturbēris animō*, *I shall come that you may retain the memory of your former valor, and not be disturbed in mind*.

331. *Quō* introduces a clause containing a comparative : *quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant*, *Caes. B. G. I. 14, that men may grieve all the more from a change in their circumstances.*

332. The purpose of the *mention* of the action suggests a stronger statement while declining to make it: *āc nē longum sit*, *Cic. Cat. III. 10. 1, and not to be lengthy.*

In this construction the Infinitive cannot be used, as in English.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (COMPLEMENTARY FINAL CLAUSES)

333. A Substantive Clause is one that denotes some case-relation with a verb, usually that of subject or object. In these clauses the idea of purpose is suggested by the verb on which the purpose clause depends.

Substantive clauses of Purpose are used with verbs of Asking, Demanding, Encouraging, Admonishing, Advising, Commanding, Urging, Permitting; such as *rogō, ōrō, petō, precor, obsecrō; postulō, flāgitō; hortor, adhortor, cohortor; moneō, admoneō; suādeō, persuādeō; mandō, ēdicō, imperō, praecipio; impellō, incitō, moveō, permoveō, adducō; concēdō, permittō*. The subordinate clause here may be considered as coming from an Imperative of Direct Discourse.

1. Clause as Subject: *hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat*, *Caes. B. G. II. 10, these could not be persuaded to delay longer and not carry aid to their friends; ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret*, *Caes. B. G. I. 22, as he had been ordered by Caesar, not to join battle.*

2. Clause as Object: *civitātī persuāsit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis eīrent*, *Caes. B. G. I. 2, he persuaded*

the state to leave their territory with all their forces; **Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret**, Caes. B. G. I. 42, *Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should not bring any foot-soldier to the interview.*

3. Apposition: **mea lēnitās hōc exspectāvit, ut id, quod latēbat, ērumperet**, Cic. Cat. II. 27. 20, *my forbearance has had this in view, namely, that that which was concealed might burst forth.*

NOTE. — **Iubeō**, *I command*, and **vetō**, *I forbid*, take the Infinitive.

334. Substantive clauses of Purpose are used with verbs of Wishing, Caring for, Striving, Bringing about, Obtaining; such as **optō**; **cūrō**, **prōspiciō**, **prōvideō**; **contendō**, **labōrō**; **faciō**, **efficiō**, **perficiō**; **adsequor**, **cōsequor**, **impetrō**: **cūrā ut valeās**, *see to it that you keep well*; **sē id contendere et labōrāre nē ea ēnūntiārentur**, Caes. B. G. I. 31, *that they were striving and toiling that those things should not be made known.*

335. Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, etc., take the Subjunctive with **nē** and **quō minus** (also written **quōminus**), when positive; they have **quō minus** or **quīn** when negative. The most usual of these verbs are **impediō**, **dēterreō**; **obsistō**, **resistō**, **obstō**, **repūgnō**, **interdicō**; **caveō**; **recūsō**: **impedior dolore animī nē plūra dīcam**, *by grief of mind I am prevented from saying more*; **nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent**, Caes. B. G. IV. 22, *the ships were prevented by the wind from coming into the same harbor.*

336. With expressions of Fearing, the Subjunctive is used with **nē** affirmative, and **ut** or **nē nōn** negative; regularly **nē nōn** is used after a negative or an interrogative with a negative force: **nē ēius suppliciō Divitiacī animum**

offenderet verēbātur, Caes. B. G. I. 19, *he was afraid that by punishing him he would wound the feelings of Divitiacus*; *timeō ut sustineās*, *I fear that you cannot stand it*; *timēre nōn dēbeō nē nōn iste illā cruce dignus iūdicētur*, Cic. 2 Verr. V. 171, *I ought not to fear that he will not be considered worthy of that cross*.

RESULT CLAUSES (CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES)

337. Result Clauses show the Consequence or Tendency of an action.

In pure Result clauses, tendency is suggested by the particles *ut*, *ut . . . nōn*, and *quīn* (*quīn* after a negative).

For the Relative Clause of Result, see **382. 4.**

338. The principal clause often contains correlative demonstratives, such as *tālis*, *tantus*, *tot*, *tam*, *tantopere*, *totiēns*, *is*, *ita*, *sic*, *eō*, *adeō*, *usque eō*: *in eō statū rēs nostrae sunt ut nōn possint esse miseriōrēs*, *our affairs are in such shape that they cannot be worse*; *atque haec omnia sic agentur ut bellum sēdētur*, Cic. Cat. II. 28. 1, *and all this shall be so managed that the war shall be stopped*.

339. Result clauses are common after a comparative with *quam* meaning *too*: *clārior rēs erat quam ut tegī ac dissimulārī posset*, *the matter was too clear to be covered up and concealed*.

340. Result clauses also depend on the impersonal *tantum abest* (*āfuit*): *tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud*, Cic. Tusc. I. 76, *so far is death from being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing*.

The forms of *absum* in this construction are generally impersonal.

SUBSTANTIVE RESULT CLAUSES (COMPLEMENTARY RESULT CLAUSES)

341. Here the tendency is suggested by the verb on which the clause depends. These clauses usually depend on verbs of Effecting. The negative is *nōn* or *nē*.

Substantive clauses of result are used: —

1. With verbs of Causation: *facere*, *efficere*, *perficere*; *adsequi*, *cōnsequi*; *prōficere*, *impetrāre*, *valēre*, *committere*, *tenēre*, *adipīscī*, *praestāre*, *ferre* (with *cōnsuētūdō*, *nātūra*, *fortūna*), *adferre*, *adiuvāre*, *expūgnāre*, *extorquēre*, *exprimere*: *nātūra adfert ut eīs faveāmus*, *nature causes us to favor them*.

2. With verbs of Compelling, Permitting, and impersonal verbs of Happening and Following; with impersonal phrases similar in meaning to these verbs: *cōgere*, *adigere*, *impellere*, *dūcere* and its compounds; *movēre*, *commovēre*; *permittere*, *sinere*, *concēdere*, *dare*; *fit*, *accidit*, *contingit*, *obtingit*, *evenit*, *sequitur*; *additur*, *accēdit*, *restat*, *reliquum est*, *appāret*; *rārum est*, *vērī simile est*, and many others: *hōc certā de causā nōndum addūcor ut faciam*, *Cic. Cat. I. 5. 29, for a certain reason, I am not yet induced to do this*; *vērū concēdō tibi ut ea praetereās*, *but I permit you to pass over this*; *accidit ut esset lūna plēna*, *Caes. B. G. IV. 29, it happened that the moon was full*; *accēdit eōdem ut etiam ipse candidātus tōtūm animum atque omnem cūrā, operam dīligentiamque suam in petitiōne nōn possit pōnere*, *Cic. Mur. 45. 1, to this is added that not even the candidate himself can give all his attention and all his care, his personal exertion and diligence, to his canvass*; *an vērī simile est ut cīvis Rōmānus aut homō līber quisquam cum gladiō in Forum dēscenderit ante lūcem?* *Cic. Sest. 78. 16, or is it likely that a Roman citizen or any free man would have resorted to the Forum, weapon in hand, before daylight?*

3. With verbs and phrases of Hindering, Preventing, Refusing, Delaying, Doubting, etc., the Complementary Result Clause is used with *quān* and *quō minus*. *Quān* is used after a negative: *neque abest suspiciō quān ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit*, Caes. B. G. I. 4, *and suspicion is not lacking that he committed suicide*; *nōn dubitō quān brevī sit Trōia peritūra*, *I do not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed*; *negārī nōn potest quān turpius sit fallere quam fallī*, *it cannot be denied that it is more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived*; *nōn esse dubium quān tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīī possent*, Caes. B. G. I. 3, *that there was no doubt that the Helvetians were the most powerful of all Gaul*; *neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent*, Caes. B. G. I. 31, *and that they would not refuse to be under their control and power forever*.

NOTE. — *Dubitō* with the Infinitive generally means *to hesitate*: *dubitās vitāre*, Cic. Cat. I. 17. 20, *do you hesitate to avoid?*

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

342. General Principle. — If the Temporal Clause simply defines the *time* of the action of the clause on which it depends, it takes the Indicative; but if the *circumstances* of the action are also implied, the verb of the Temporal Clause is in the Subjunctive. This may be taken as a general rule, subject to many exceptions.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *postquam*, *ut*, ETC.

343. Temporal Clauses introduced by *ut*, *ubi*, *quandōque*, *quandōcumque*, *postquam*, *simul ac* (*simul atque*), and other conjunctions, take the Indicative, as the clauses are

merely temporal: **postquam id animum advertit**, Caes. B. G. I. 24, *after he directed his attention to this*.

1. The Perfect or the Historical Present is used of a *single act*: **ut Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus ērūpit ex urbe**, Cic. Cat. III. 3. 25, *when Catiline broke forth from the city a few days ago*.

2. The Perfect often has the force of a Pluperfect: **simul atque adsēdistī partem istam subselliōrum nūdā atque inānem reliquērunt**, Cic. Cat. I. 16. 10, *as soon as you had taken your seat, they left that part of the benches bare and empty*.

3. The Pluperfect is used of repeated acts; also with **postquam** referring to a single act, if the interval of time is specified: **ut quisque istius animum offenderat, in lautumiās statim coniciēbātur**, 2 Verr. 5. 143, *whenever any one had given him offense, he was at once thrown into the quarries*; **Hannibal tertiō annō postquam domō profūgerat, in Africā rediit**, *Hannibal returned to Africa the third year after he had fled from home*.

4. The Imperfect is used of overlapping action; *i.e.* of action continued into the time of the principal clause: **ubi nēmō obuius ibat, ad castra hostium tendunt**, *when (they found that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy*.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *cum*

344. Following the general principle for Temporal Clauses, **cum** with a strictly temporal force takes the Indicative, while circumstantial **cum** takes the Subjunctive.

345. **Cum** referring to the Present or the Future takes the Indicative: **cum suis finibus eos prohibent**, Caes. B. G.

I. 1, *while they are keeping them off from their borders*; **dē hīs rēbus, ōtiōsī cum erimus, loquēmur**, *we will speak about these matters when we are at leisure.*

346. **Cum** with the Indicative (Past Time) is used: —

1. To fix the point of time: **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīcipēs erant Aeduī**, *Caes. B. G. VI. 12, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduians were leaders of the one faction.*

2. With an Iterative force: **et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt ex essedīs dēsiliunt**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 33, and whenever they have worked their way between the troops of cavalry, they leap down from their chariots.*

NOTE. — In Livy the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are common with this force.

3. When **cum** is put in what is logically the main clause: **vix ea fātus erat cum scindit sē nūbēs**, *Verg. Aen. I. 586, scarcely had he said this, when the cloud burst.*

347. **Cum** Circumstantial with the Subjunctive (Imperfect and Pluperfect) describes the time by natural events, *when, while, as soon as*: **ipsī comprehēnsī ad mē, cum iam dilūcēsceret, dēdūcuntur**, *Cic. Cat. III. 6. 4, they themselves, having been arrested, were brought before me when day was just beginning to dawn.*

348. **Cum** Historical, in narration, describes the occasion or circumstances of an action: **Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, . . . ad eum lēgātī revertuntur**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 11, when Caesar was not more than twelve miles distant from the enemy, the ambassadors returned to him.*

NOTE. — The Imperfect and Pluperfect are the only tenses used; the Imperfect for contemporaneous, the Pluperfect for antecedent action.

Often, however, the Subjunctive is used where the idea is chiefly temporal, the circumstantial idea being involved to only a slight degree, if at all: *cum esset Caesar in citiōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur*, Caes. B. G. II. 1, *while Caesar was in hither Gaul, frequent rumors were brought to him*. In this the *cum*-clause seems to be purely temporal.

In past time *cum* takes the Subjunctive much more frequently than the Indicative. In Caesar the proportion is more than 10 to 1.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *antequam*, *dum*, ETC.

349. *Antequam*, *priusquam*, *dōnec*, *dum*, and *quoad*, introducing clauses merely temporal, take the Indicative, but where *purpose* is implied they take the Subjunctive.

350. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Indicative to denote an actual fact: *antequam ad sententiam redeō dē mē pauca dīcam*, Cic. Cat. IV. 20. 1, *before I return to the motion, I shall say a few words about myself*; *nec prius ille est relictus locus quam finis est pūgnandī factus*, *nor was that position abandoned before an end was made of fighting*.

NOTE. — *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as in the last sentence.

351. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Subjunctive if the action is purposely anticipated; or, after a negative, purposely awaited: *antequam dē rē publicā dīcam, expōnam cōnsilium*, *before I speak of the state, I will set forth my plan*; *Gallī nōn prius dūcēs dīmittunt quam ab hīs sit con-*

cessum arma utī capiant, *Caes. B. G. III. 18, the Gauls did not send away the chieftains before the latter had consented to take up arms.*

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is often found with a Historical tense: **priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiacum vocārī iubet**, *Caes. B. G. I. 19, before he risked anything, he ordered Divitiacus to be summoned.*

352. Dum, *while*, takes the Indicative, usually the Historical Present: **dum Caesar morātur lēgātī vērunt**, *Caes. B. G. IV. 22, while Caesar delayed, the ambassadors came.*

353. Dum, *as long as*, may take any tense: **ille erat ūnus timendus ex istīs omnibus, sed tam diū, dum urbis moenibus continēbātur**, *Cic. Cat. III. 16. 9, he alone was to be feared of all those, but only so long as he was held in by the walls of the city.*

354. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until, take the Indicative to denote an actual event; the Subjunctive to denote anticipation or expectation: **pūgnāvērunt hostēs dum dux interfectus est**, *the enemy fought until their leader was slain; dum hostēs veniant, morābor, I shall wait until the enemy come.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES

355. Cum Causal takes the Subjunctive: **quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepistī**, *Cic. Cat. I. 10. 1, since this is the case, Catiline, go whither you started.*

356. Quandō takes the Indicative: **quandō hōc miserius esse nihil potest, omittam**, *since nothing can be more wretched than this, I will pass it over.*

357. Quod, quia, quoniam take the Indicative when the writer or speaker states the reason on his own authority;

the Subjunctive, when he refuses to be held accountable for it and refers it to some one else. This is the Subjunctive of Repudiated Statement: **graviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iis nōn sublevētur**, Caes. B. G. I. 16, *he bitterly censures them because (as he claims) he was not assisted by them; doleō quia dolēs, I am grieved because you are.*

358. A hypothetical reason takes the Subjunctive; the real reason, the Indicative: **pugilēs ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia omne corpus intenditur**, Cic. Tusc. II. 23, *boxers groan, not because they are in pain, but because the whole body is put to the stretch.*

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH *quod*

359. These clauses take the Indicative. They are usually found:—

1. In apposition with **hōc, id, illud, eō, ex eō, inde**, etc.: **ex tōtā laude Rēgulī illud est admirātiōne dignum, quod captīvōs retinendōs cēnsuit**, *of all the praise paid Regulus this is worthy of admiration, that he voted for keeping the captives.*

2. With **facere, fit, accidit, ēvenit**, modified by **bene, male, commodē, opportūnē**: **bene facis, quod litterās voluptātibus antepōnis**, *you do well in preferring letters to pleasures.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

360. A Conditional or Hypothetical sentence contains two clauses: the Condition or Protasis (the *if*-clause), and the Conclusion or Apodosis (the *then*-clause): thus, **sī hōc dīcis, errās**, *if you say this, you are in error*, is a conditional sentence, of which **sī hōc dīcis** is the condition and **errās** the conclusion.

361. Conditional Particles.—**Sī, if**, is the usual particle. The negative of **sī** is **nisi** or **sī nōn**; **sī nōn** being used to

negative a single word, and **nisi** to negative the entire condition.

1. **Sī nōn** is usual when the condition is concessive, or when the affirmative form of the same verb as that of the conclusion precedes: **sī nōn moderātē, at certē populārīter**, Cic. Sest. 37. 24, *if not with moderation, at least in the interests of the people*; **ēdūc tēcum etiam omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plūrimōs**, Cic. Cat. I. 10. 4, *lead out with you also all of your followers; if not all, as many as possible*.

NOTE. — **Minus** takes the place of **nōn** where the verb is not repeated.

2. **Nisi** adds an exception or a restriction to the leading clause, and is common after negatives; it is often strengthened by **forte, vērō**: **nisi vērō sī quis est**, Cic. Cat. II. 6. 3, *unless, indeed, there is some one*; **et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parricidiō suō cōgitāre**, Cic. Cat. I. 17. 26, *and (your country) has for a long time been of opinion that you think of nothing save her destruction*.

3. **Sīn** excludes the preceding condition; it is often strengthened by **autem, aliter, minus, vērō, secus**: **hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī est vērū, nē opprimar; sīn falsus, ut tandem aliquandō timēre dēsinam**, Cic. Cat. I. 18. 40, *take away from me this fear; if it is true, that I may not be crushed; but if false, that I may finally cease to fear*.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

362. There are three classes of Conditional Sentences: Logical, Ideal, Unreal.

363. Logical Condition (Condition of Fact or Probability). — 1. This is by far the most common condition. It refers to the past, the present, or the future. The

condition is stated as a fact, positive or negative, or as a probability.

Mood: Indicative in both clauses. Tense: Any.

Sī hōc dīcis, errās, if you say this, you are in error; sī peccāvī, insciēns peccāvī, if I did wrong, I did so unwittingly; sī hōc dīxeris, errābis (errāveris), if you say this, you will be in error.

2. The condition may take the indefinite *you* of the Subjunctive Present or Perfect, with the force of an Indicative: (**senectūs**) **plēna est voluptātis, sī illā sciās ūtī**, Sen. E. M. 12. 4, (*old age*) *is full of pleasure, if you know how to use it.*

3. The conclusion may be an Imperative or an independent Subjunctive: "**dēsilīte**," inquit, "**mīlītēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere**," Caes. B. G. IV. 25, "*leap down*," said he, "*soldiers, unless you wish to betray the standard to the enemy.*"

4. The Future Perfect in the conclusion is rare. When used, it implies that the action of its verb will be completed at the same time as that of the condition, although the latter began first: **sīve hōc statueritis, dederitis mihi**, Cic. Cat. IV. 11. 1, *if you adopt this, you will at once give me.*

364. Ideal Condition (Condition of Possibility).— This is the least common of the conditions. It refers to future time and denotes possibility. From the standpoint of the English, it may be generally recognized by *were to* or *should* in the condition.

Mood: Subjunctive. Tense: Present. Sometimes the Perfect is used (to denote completed action).

Sī hōc dīcās, errēs, if you were to say this, you would be mistaken; haec sī tēcum, ita ut dīxī, patria loquātur, nōne

impetrāre dēbeat? Cic. Cat. I. 19. 1, *if your fatherland should talk with you, just as I have said, ought she not to obtain her request?*

365. The Latins often use the Ideal Condition where the contents of the sentence would indicate the Unreal. All depends upon the view of the speaker or writer, or his choice in the form of presentation.

The Imperative and the Future Indicative are often found in the conclusion, where the idea of futurity is to be made prominent.

366. Unreal Condition (Condition Contrary to Fact).—Here the condition is represented as unreal, impossible, contrary to fact.

Mood: Subjunctive in both clauses. Tense: Imperfect for present time; Pluperfect for past time.

Servī mehercule mei sī mē istō pactō metuerent, ut tē metuunt omnēs civēs tuī, domum meam relinquendam putārem, Cic. Cat. I. 17. 13, *by Hercules, if my slaves feared me as all your fellow-citizens fear you, I would think that I ought to leave my home; at sī hōc idem P. Sestiō dīxissem, mihi senātus vim et manūs intulisset,* Cic. Cat. I. 21. 30, *but if I had said this same thing to Publius Sestius, the senate would have laid violent hands on me.*

367. The Imperfect Subjunctive, denoting a continuous act or state, sometimes refers to the past: **ego si hōc optimum factū iūdicārem, ūnūs ūsūram hōrae gladiātōrī istī ad vivendum nōn dedissem,** Cic. Cat. I. 29. 3, *if I had thought (and still thought) that this were best to be done, I would not have given that bully the use of one hour of life.*

368. The conclusion may be in the Imperfect or Perfect Indicative, in expressions of Ability, Obligation, Necessity,

Desirability, Propriety, the Imperfect referring to both present and past time: *dēlārī potuit exercitus, sī quis aggrēdī ausus esset*, *the army could have been destroyed, if any one had dared to attack it.*

369. The Indicative of either Periphrastic Conjugation may be used in the conclusion: *nisi vīnum dēfēcisset, multō plūra et graviōra dictūrī fuimus*, *if the wine had not given out, we would have said a great many more and more serious things.*

370. Mixed Conditions.—Often the condition is of one class, the conclusion of another: *nōs autem fortēs virī satis facere rei pūblicae vidēmur, sī istīus furōrem ac tēla vitēmus*, Cic. Cat. I. 2. 17, *but we, brave men! seem to be doing enough for the state, if we avoid his fury and weapons (= the fury of his weapons).* Here we have the Subjunctive in the condition, the Indicative in the conclusion. *Quōs quidem ego sī ullō modō fierī possit, nōn tam ulcīscī studeō*, Cic. Cat. II. 17. 5, *these indeed, if it can be done in any way, I desire not so much to punish.* Here we have the Subjunctive in the condition, the Indicative in the conclusion; but the meaning of *studeō* conveys *contingency*.

371. Incomplete Conditional Sentences.—Sometimes the conditional particle is omitted: *ūnum cōgnōris, omnēs nōris*, (*if*) *you know one, you know all.*

372. The condition is expressed in a word or a phrase: *sic dēnique victor . . . mittēre*, Verg. Aen. III. 439, *thus at length you shall be sent as victor.* Here *sic* = *sī id fēceris*, *if you do this.* *Ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlētis, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt*, Caes. B. G. III. 18, *as if victory were assured, collecting fagots and twigs with which to fill up the trenches of*

the Romans, they advanced against the camp. (Here the condition is expressed in the Ablative Absolute, *explōrātā victōriā*.)

373. Some other word may take the place of the particle: *haec āra tuēbitur omnēs, aut moriēre simul*, Verg. Aen. II. 523–4, *this altar shall protect us all, or (= if not) you shall die with us.*

374. To assign any condition in English to its proper class, consider the following table:—

Past	Present	Future
Logical	Logical	Logical
Unreal	Unreal	Ideal

Observe that in past or present time, if the action is not *contrary to fact*, the condition is Logical; for the future, unless the protasis has *were to* or *should*, the condition is Logical.

To recognize a condition in Latin when complicated by Indirect Discourse, remember that the Logical is the most common. The sense will generally make it plain, if it is Unreal. The Ideal is the least common, and is less definite than the Logical.

375. Conditional Clauses of Comparison.—The conclusion is omitted in comparisons with *āc sī, ut sī, quam sī, quasi, tamquam sī, velut sī, tamquam, velut, ceu, as if*:—

Mood: Subjunctive. Tense: usually determined by the sequence rather than the apparent condition: *loquor quasi ego illud fēcerim*, Cic. II. Verr. 1. 29, *I speak as if I had done that*; *respondit tamquam sī esset cōsul*, *he replied as if he were consul.*

376. Proviso (Negative nē).—*Dum, modo, and dum modo*, with the Subjunctive, denote a Proviso: *dīcātur*

sānē ēiectus esse ā mē, dum modo eat in exsilium, Cic. Cat. II. 15. 16, for all I care, let him be said to have been cast out by me, provided he goes into exile.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

377. Concession may be expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive: **sit Scīpiō clārus, Cic. Cat. IV. 21. 13, grant that Scipio is famous.**

378. 1. The clauses usually known as Concessive clauses are more properly Adversative clauses, and are introduced by **licet, quamvīs, ut, nē, cum, etiam sī, etsī, tametsī, quamquam**, with the general sense of *although*. They are regularly followed by a *yet*-clause, the whole statement being that *a certain thing follows, despite the occurrence of something that has a tendency to prevent it*. In these clauses **ut** often means *but so that*, *ita* being usually expressed either in the principal clause or at the beginning of the **ut**-clause: **ut tamen artum solveret hospitīis animum, Hor. Bk. II. Sat. VI. 82, yet not without opening his close breast in acts of hospitality.**

2. Licet, quamvīs, ut, nē, take the Subjunctive; but **quamvīs** with the Indicative is common in Horace and late prose: **licet fremant omnēs, ego nōn tacēbō, though all complain, I shall not keep silent.**

NOTE. — **Quamvīs** with the positive of an adjective or adverb denotes a *high pitch*: **itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent, Caes. B. G. IV. 2, and so, no matter how few in number, they dare attack any number of cavalry with housings.**

3. Etiam sī takes both the Indicative and the Subjunctive, but the Subjunctive is the more common.

4. **Etsi** and **tametsi** usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive.

5. **Quamquam** usually takes the Indicative.

NOTE.—In principal clauses **quamquam** has a *corrective* force, modifying a previous statement that is too strong or intensifying one that is too weak. It is translated *and yet*. **Tametsi** has a like use.

6. **Cum** Concessive takes the Subjunctive: **cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit**, Caes. B. G. I. 26, *though the battle lasted from the seventh hour until evening, no one could see an enemy's back*.

379. The Future sometimes has a concessive force: **excūdent aliī spīrantia mollius aera**, Verg. Aen. VI. 847, *others may fashion images of brass that breathe more gently*.

RELATIVE CLAUSES

380. Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs. The relative clause, when used simply as an adjective, takes the Indicative: **virum canō quī in Ītaliā vēnit**, Verg. Aen. I. 1, *I sing of the hero who came into Italy*.

381. Iterative relatives and relatives used with an iterative force take the Indicative: **quae sārārī poterunt quācumque ratiōne sārābō**, Cic. Cat. II. 11. 41, *what can be healed I will, by all possible means, heal*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES

382. When the clause implies Concession, Cause, Purpose, Result, Characteristic, the Subjunctive is used:—

1. CONCESSION: **Nomadumque petam cōnūbia quōs sim tōtiēns iam dēdignāta marītōs?** Verg. Aen. IV. 536, *and shall*

I seek marriage with the Numidians whom I have so often spurned as suitors?

2. CAUSE: *infēlix quī nōn spōnsae praecepta furentis audierit!* Verg. Aen. II. 345, *unfortunate in not listening to the warnings of his inspired betrothed!*

NOTE. — The causal force is intensified by *ut, utpote, as, quippe*, namely.

3. PURPOSE: *equitātum praemittit quī videant*, Caes. B. G. I. 15, *Caesar sent forward cavalry to see.*

4. RESULT: *turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distarent*, Caes. B. G. VII. 72, *around the whole work he placed towers which were eighty feet apart.*

NOTE. — In a result clause, the relative is equivalent to *ut* with a demonstrative or a personal pronoun.

5. CHARACTERISTIC: *habēs ubi ostentēs*, Cic. Cat. I. 26. 18, *you have an opportunity to display.*

383. Characteristic. — The usual ideas are those of Character or Fitness, the thought seeming to be that the relative attaches some permanent characteristic to the antecedent. The Subjunctive (consecutive) is the regular mood: —

1. With a definite antecedent where the character is emphasized. This is regularly the case with *dignus, indignus, aptus, idōneus, is, tālis, ēiusmodī, tam, tantus, ūnus, sōlus*: *nōn tū is es quī hōc nēsciās*, *you are not the man to be ignorant of this*; *Caesar idōneus esse vidētur quī rem publicam administret*, *Caesar seems to be a suitable man to manage the state.*

2. With an indefinite antecedent or its equivalent: *sunt quī putent*, *there are some who think.*

3. After comparatives with *quam*, as an object clause: *quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici pos-*

set, Caes. B. G. II. 21, *because the enemy were not more than a javelin's throw away.*

4. After a negative or an interrogative that implies a negative answer, *quīn* is often used for *quī nōn*: *quis est quīn cernat quanta vis sit in sēnsibus?* *who is there that does not see how much force there is in the senses?* *nēmō erat quī nēscīret,* *there was no one who did not know.*

5. Here belong such phrases as *quod sciam*, *so far as I know.*

QUESTIONS

DIRECT QUESTIONS

384. Questions are asked by interrogative pronouns and adverbs, or by interrogative particles. The mood of the question is the mood of the answer that is expected or suggested.

1. A Sentence-Question relates to the action itself, and can be answered by *yes* or *no*.

2. A Word-Question has an interrogative word, and cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*.

3. A Rhetorical Question does not expect an answer; it makes a statement in the form of a question.

385. 1. Interrogative Particles. — In a Sentence-Question the enclitic *-ne* is attached to the emphatic word. It usually suggests nothing as to the nature of the answer: *tūne huic crēdis?* *do you believe this fellow?*

2. *-ne* is sometimes equivalent to an emphatic *nōnne*: *meministine mē dicere?* Cic. Cat. I. 7. 8, *do you not remember that I said?*

3. *Nōnne* expects an affirmative answer; it usually comes first in the sentence. If there are several parts to the question, *nōn* is used in all save the first: *nōnne hunc*

in vincla dūcī, nōn ad mortem rapī, nōn summō suppliciō mactārī imperābis? Cic. Cat. I. 27. 12, *will you not order this man to be put into chains, to be hurried away to death, to be put to death with the most severe torture?*

4. **Num** expects a negative answer; it comes first in a sentence: **num mē fefellit?** Cic. Cat. I. 7. 12, *did it escape me?*

5. **An** introduces the second part of a disjunctive question; that is, a question giving a choice between two, while **aut** gives the continuation of a simple question. The first part of this disjunctive question may be gotten from the context, or it may be expressed, **utrum** or **-ne** being the particle: **vōsne vērō L. Domitium an vōs Domitius dēseruit?** Caes. B. C. II. 32, *indeed did you desert Lucius Domitius or did Domitius desert you?* (this implies that one or the other is true); **timēsne Pompēium aut Caesarem?** *do you fear Pompey or Caesar?* (this does not necessarily imply that you fear either of them); **an vērō P. Scīpiō Ti. Gracchum interfēcit?** Cic. Cat. I. 3. 20, (*am I wrong,*) *or did Publius Scipio slay Tiberius Gracchus?*

NOTE. — *Or not* is expressed by **an nōn**: **isne est quem quaerō an nōn?** *is he the man I am looking for or not?*

386. 1. The answer “Yes” is expressed:—

(1) by repeating the emphatic word: **audīsne mē?**—**Audiō**, *do you hear me?*—*Yes*.

(2) by **ita, ita est, ita vērō est, etiam, factum, vērū, sānē, sānē quidem**, etc.

2. “No” is expressed by repeating the emphatic word with **nōn, minimē, minimē vērō**, etc.: **sōlus vēnistīne?**—**Nōn sōlus**, *did you come alone?*—*No*.

NOTE. — **Immō** conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement, — *yes indeed, nay rather*.

387. 1. Peculiarities. — **Quid** is often used alone, to indicate surprise or indignation, or to draw attention to what follows, which is usually a question: **quid?** Cic. Cat. I. 8. 23, *what (do you think of this statement I am about to make)?*

2. Quid enim, in Cicero, is used after a general statement to introduce a refutation of an objection, and is always followed by a question: **sī ista aegritūdō perturbāre animum sapientis nōn potest, nūlla perturbātiō poterit. Quid enim? Metusne conturbet?** *if such sickness cannot disquiet the mind of a wise man, there can be no disquiet. What then? Shall fear annoy?*

3. Ut in direct questions is colloquial: **ut valēs?** *how is your health?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

388. Indirect Questions are substantive clauses that depend on verbs of Asking, Saying, Knowing, etc. They are introduced by interrogative pronouns and adverbs. Mood: Subjunctive: **quis sim, sciēs ex eō quem ad tē misi**, Cic. Cat. III. 12. 40, *who I am you shall learn from him whom I have sent to you.*

389. It is important to distinguish in English between a dependent Interrogative and a Relative clause. In the case of the Interrogative, the whole clause is the object (or subject) of the leading verb; in a Relative clause the antecedent of the Relative is the object (or subject) of the leading verb. An Interrogative clause involves a direct question; a Relative does not.

	Interrogative	Relative
<i>Who</i>	quis	quī
<i>What</i>	quid	quod
<i>When</i>	quandō	cum, ubi

390. The same interrogative particles are used as in the direct question :—

1. **Num** means *whether*: **interrogās mē num in exilium** (supply **tē ire iubeam**), Cic. Cat. I. 13. 35, *you ask me whether (I order you to go) into exile.*

2. **Sī**, *whether*, is used after verbs and sentences denoting Attempt and sometimes after verbs of Asking: **Aenēās petit Anthea sī quem iactātum ventō videat**, Verg. Aen. I. 181, *Aeneas strives (to see) if he can see anything of Antheus tossed by the storm*; **sī posset praebere rogātus**, Hor. Ep. I. 6. 41, *being asked if he could furnish.*

3. *Or not* is expressed by **necne**, but **an nōn** is the more common if the latter alternative contradicts the former: **dī utrum sint necne sint quaeritur**, Cic. N. D. III. 17, *the question is whether there are gods or not.*

4. **An** is used with **haud sciō**, **nēsciō**, **dubitō**, **incertum est**, to express the probable alternative, the improbable alternative being omitted: **nēsciō an amplius mihi negōtīi contrahātur**, Cic. Cat. IV. 9. 6, *probably more trouble is being prepared for me.*

NOTE.—The interrogative may be in a participial clause: **quam utilitātem petentēs scīre cupimus illa quae occulta nōbīs sunt**, Cic. Fin. III. 11. 37, *seeking what good do we desire to know what is hidden from us (= what good do we seek that we, etc.).*

5. Expressions like **nēsciō quis**, *some one (I know not who)*, are sometimes used like indefinite pronouns and do not affect the construction.

6. Two or more interrogatives may be used in the same sentence: **quem sī interficere voluisset, quantae quotiēs occāsionēs quam praeclārae fuērunt**, *and if he had wished to kill him, what great opportunities there were, how excellent, how often!*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA)

391. Direct Discourse (**Ōrātiō Rēcta**) gives the speaker's exact language, while Indirect Discourse gives the substance:—

DIRECT

HIS Caesar ita respondit:
"Hōc mihi minus dubitātiōnis
datur, quod eās rēs quās **vōs**,
 lēgātī Helvētīī, **commemorā-**
stis memoriā **teneō**."

To them Caesar replied as follows: "For this reason I have less hesitation, because I remember the things which you, Helvetian ambassadors, have mentioned."

INDIRECT

HIS Caesar ita respondit:
"Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis
dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī
 Helvētīī **commemorāssent** me-
 moriā **tenēret**."

To them Caesar replied as follows: "That for that reason he had less hesitation, because he remembered the things which the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned."

NOTES.—1. Sometimes the verb of saying is not expressed.

2. **Negō** is used for **dīcō nōn**.

3. For Verbs of Fearing, see **336**.

4. For **dubitō** with negative or interrogative, see **341. 3**.

MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

392. Declarative Sentences.—When a change is made from the Direct to the Indirect Discourse, after a verb of Saying, Thinking, or Knowing, the clause which was the principal clause in the Direct Discourse takes its verb in the Infinitive (with a Subject Accusative), while the subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive.

DIRECT

Caesar hōc fēcit, *Caesar did this.*

Agnum dabō in Ītaliā, Āfricā, Hispāniā, ubi quisque **volet**.

I will give land in Italy, Africa, Spain, wherever each one wishes it.

INDIRECT

Dicō Caesarem hōc fēcisse, *I say that Caesar did this.*

Agnum respondet sēsē datūrum esse in Ītaliā, Āfricā, Hispāniā, ubi quisque **velit**.

He replies that he will give land in Italy, Africa, Spain, wherever each one wishes it.

NOTES.—1. The conjunction *that* of English is not translated in Latin.

2. The Infinitive is sometimes found in a relative clause, when the relative is felt as a principal clause, and may be replaced by a demonstrative with a coördinating conjunction.

3. Explanatory subordinate clauses are not considered as part of the Indirect Discourse, and do not change their mood: **videō duās adhūc esse sententiās, ūnam D. Silānī, quī cōnset eōs, quī haec dēlēre cōnātī sunt, morte esse multandōs**, Cic. Cat. IV. 7. 1, *I see that so far there are two opinions, one that of Decimus Silanus, who proposes that those should be put to death who have attempted to destroy this city (cōnātī sunt is explanatory).*

393. Imperative Clauses (Principal).—Imperatives and Imperative Subjunctives take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, **nē** being the negative: **imperāvit ut obsidēs redderet**, *he ordered that he should return the hostages.* (In the Direct Discourse, **redde**.)

NOTES.—1. **Iubeō** and **vetō** take the Present Infinitive.

2. Use **vetō** instead of **iubeō nōn**.

394. Interrogative Clauses (Principal).—An Indirect (or Dependent) Question takes the Subjunctive: **quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, ubi fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōsiliī cēperis, quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris?** Cic. Cat. I. 1. 9, *who of us do you think does not*

know what you did last night, what you did the night before, where you were, whom you assembled, what plan you formed?

395. Rhetorical Questions. — If the verb of the rhetorical question was in the Indicative in the Direct Discourse, in changing to the Indirect the first and third persons are put in the Infinitive, while the second person is put in the Subjunctive:—

DIRECT

Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci **volō**, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēponere **possum**?

But if I am willing to forget the old insult, can I also lay aside the remembrance of fresh wrongs?

Quid tandem **verēbimini**?
Why, pray, should you fear?

INDIRECT

Rogāvit, quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci **vellet**, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēponere **posse**.

He asked if he could also lay aside the remembrance of fresh wrongs, if he were willing to forget the old insult.

Rogāvit quid tandem **verērentur**. *He asked why, pray, they should fear.*

TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

396. For tenses of the Infinitive, see **260**; for tenses of the Subjunctive, apply the law for Sequence of Tenses.

397. In Indirect Question. — 1. If the Direct Discourse had the Present Indicative, the Indirect has the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.

2. If the Direct had the Perfect Indicative, the Indirect has the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive

3. If the Direct had the Future Indicative, the Indirect has *-ūrus sim* or *-ūrus essem*.

398. In Subordinate Clauses. — 1. If the Direct Discourse had the Present Indicative, the Indirect has the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.

2. If the Direct had the Perfect Indicative, the Indirect has the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

3. If the Direct had the Future Indicative, the Indirect has the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.

4. If the Direct had the Future Perfect Indicative, the Indirect has the Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

GENERAL RULES FOR CHANGING TO INDIRECT DISCOURSE

399. 1. All verbs, pronouns, and possessive adjectives in Indirect Discourse are of the third person.

2. *Hic* usually changes to *ille*, and *nunc* to *tum*.

3. The first person plural is retained when it refers to the Roman people (see *Caes. B. G. I. 44*).

4. The reflexive subject of the Infinitive must be expressed: *mē, tē, nōs, vōs, sē: dīcō mē valēre, I say that I am well; dīcis tē valēre, you say that you are well; dīcit sē valēre, he says that he is well.*

PARTIAL OBLIQUITY (INFORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE)

400. The subordinate clause of Indirect Discourse may occur when the principal clause is merely implied, or is not expressed in the usual way (Infinitive); this is common after verbs of Fearing and as part of an Indirect Question: *Themistoclēs nocte ambulābat quod somnum capere nōn posset, Themistocles used to walk about at night, because (as he said) "he could not sleep."*

401. SPECIMEN OF THE CHANGE OF ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA INTO ŌRĀTIŌ RĒCTA

INDIRECT

Māgnoperē ōrābant ut **sibi** auxilium **ferret**, quod graviter ab Suēbīs **premerentur**; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae **prohibērētur**, exercitum modo Rhēnum **trānsportāret**: **id sibi** ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis **futūrum**: tantum **esse nōmen** atque **opiniōnem** **ēius** exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ūltimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, ut opiniōne et amīcitiā populi Rōmānī tūtī esse **possint**, Caes. B. G. IV. 16.

They earnestly begged that he would render them aid, because they were hard pressed by the Suebi; or if he was prevented from doing that by matters of state, that he would at least transport his army across the Rhine: that that would be enough for aid and hope for the future: that the name and reputation of his army was so great, even to the most remote tribes of the Germans, since Ariovistus had been beaten and

DIRECT

Nōbīs auxilium **fer**, quod graviter ab Suēbīs **premur**; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae **prohibēberis**, exercitum modo Rhēnum **trānsportā**: **hōc nōbīs** ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis **erit**: tantum **est nōmen** atque **opiniō tuī** exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ūltimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, ut opiniōne et amīcitiā populi Rōmānī tūtī esse **possimus**.

Bear aid to us, because we are hard pressed by the Suebi: or, if you are prevented from doing that by matters of state, at least transport your army across the Rhine: this will be enough for aid and hope for the future: so great is the name and reputation of your army, even to the most remote tribes of the Germans, since Ariovistus has been beaten and this last battle fought, that we can be safe by the reputation

this last battle had been fought, of the friendship of the Roman people.
that they could be safe by the reputation of the friendship of the Roman people.

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Logical Conditions

402. Condition: Subjunctive, the tense depending on the law of the Sequence of Tenses.

Conclusion: Indicatives become corresponding Infinitives: —

DIRECT

Sī peccō, insciēns peccō, if I am doing wrong, I do so unwittingly.

Sī hōc crēdēbās, errāvistī, if you believed this, you were in error.

Sī id crēdēs, errābis, if you believe that, you will be in error.

Sī id crēdideris, errābis, if you believe that, you will be in error.

INDIRECT

Dicō, sī peccem, mē inscientem peccāre.

Dixī, sī peccārem, mē inscientem peccāre.

Dicō, sī hōc crēderēs, tē errāvisse.

Dixī, sī hōc crēderēs, tē errāvisse.

Dicō tē, sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse.

Dixī tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

Dicō tē, sī id crēdideris, errātūrum esse.

Dixī tē, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse.

Ideal Conditions

403. Condition: Subjunctive, the tense depending on the law of Sequence of Tenses.

Conclusion : Becomes Future Infinitive.

Sī id crēdās, errēs, if you were to believe that, you would be in error.

Dicō tē, sī id crēdās, errātūrum esse.

Dixī tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

Unreal Conditions

404. Condition : Remains unchanged.

Conclusion : Imperfect Subjunctive becomes Future Infinitive ; in the Passive it is expressed by **futūrum esse** (fore) followed by **ut** with the Imperfect Subjunctive. The Pluperfect Subjunctive becomes the Infinitive in **-ūrus fuisse** ; with verbs which have no Future Participle and for all verbs in the Passive, **futūrum fuisse** **ut** with the Imperfect Subjunctive is used.

NOTES. — 1. The law of Sequence of Tenses does not affect this condition.

2. While the Imperfect here refers to present time, it is generally regarded as Historical.

DIRECT

Sī id crēderēs, errārēs, if you believed this, you would be in error.

Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad illum vēnīassem, if I had needed anything from Caesar, I would have gone to him.

Quōrum sī aetās potuisset esse longinquior, omnibus perfectis artibus, omnī doctrinā,

INDIRECT

Dicō (dixī) tē, sī id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

Ariovistus respondit, sī quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventūrum fuisse, Caes. B. G. I. 34, Ariovistus replied that if he had needed anything of Caesar, he would have gone to him.

Dixit, sī eōrum aetās potuisset esse longinquior, futūrum fuisse ut omnibus perfectis

<p>hominum vīta ērudīta esset, <i>if their term of life could have been longer, the lives of men would have been polished with the perfection of all arts and all learning.</i></p>	<p>artibus, omni doctrīnā, hominum vīta ērudirētur, <i>he said that if their term of life could have been longer, the lives of men would have been polished with the perfection of all arts and all learning.</i></p>
---	---

NOTE.—If the conditional sentence depends on a construction that requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect active becomes -ūrus fuerim.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

405. A subordinate clause depending on a Subjunctive or an Infinitive is put in the Subjunctive by Attraction, if the two clauses form essential parts of a whole: *quicquid increpuerit, Catilinam timēri nōn est ferendum*, Cic. Cat. I. 18. 37, *it is not to be endured that Catiline is to be feared at the slightest noise* (lit. *whatever rustles*).

SPECIAL USES OF NOUNS

406. Concrete for Abstract.—1. Denoting a Period of Life: *ā puerō = ā pueritiā, from boyhood.*

2. In designations of Office: *Caesare cōsule = in cōsulātū Caesaris, in Caesar's consulship.*

3. The name of a People for a Country: *in Segūsiāvōs*, Caes. B. G. I. 10, *into the country of the Segusiavi.*

407. Abstract for Concrete in a collective sense: *lūxuriā*, Cic. Cat. II. 5. 5, *high livers*; *coniūrātiōnis*, Cic. Cat. I. 6. 4, *conspirators*; *latrōciniō*, Cic. Cat. I. 31. 5, *a band of brigands.*

408. Plural for Singular.—The plural of abstract nouns may be translated as singular or as “acts of”: *libidinēs*,

Cic. Cat. II. 10. 14, (*acts of*) *lust*; *audāciae*, Cic. Cat. II. 10. 14, (*acts of*) *recklessness*.

409. Use of Plural. — When reference is made to several persons or things, the Latin is often very exact in the use of the plural: *Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmāvit*, Caes. B. G. I. 33, *Caesar encouraged the minds of the Gauls with words*.

410. Generic Plural. — The plural is used in such sentences as this: *quārē imitēmur nostrōs Brūtōs, Camillōs*, etc., Cic. Sest. 143. 12, *therefore let us imitate men like our Brutus, Camillus*, etc.

SUBSTITUTES FOR PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

411. 1. A Genitive: *exsul patriae*, *a refugee from his country*.

2. An Adjective: *terrēnus tumulus*, *a mound of earth*.

3. A Relative clause: *pōns qui in flūmine est*, *a bridge over a river*.

ADJECTIVES

412. Adjectives as Nouns. — 1. In the plural, masculine adjectives denote Classes or Kinds of men: *boni*, *the good*, *the loyal*; *docti*, *the learned*; *nostri*, *our men*.

2. In the plural, neuters are usually found only in the Nominative or Accusative. They denote things: *parva*, *small things*; *bona*, *property*.

NOTE. — The feminine is not used for things unless *rēs* is expressed. Where the masculine and neuter would be alike, *rēs* is often used, to avoid ambiguity: *multārum rērum*, instead of *multōrum*.

3. In the singular, masculines are rare unless limited by a pronoun: *quidam stultus*, *a certain base fellow*.

4. In the singular, neuters are usually found with the Partitive Genitive: *aliquid novī*, *something new*.

5. Constant use has given some adjectives the force of nouns: *adversārius*, *opponent*; *amīcus*, *friend*; *aquārius*, *waterman*; *cōgnātus*, *kinsman*.

413. Sometimes the adjective has the translation of an adverb: *servus vēnit laetus*, *the slave went joyfully*.

414. When the verb *to be* has an Infinitive or a clause for its subject, a predicate adjective is put in the neuter gender: *hūmānum est errāre*, *to err is human*.

415. A plural noun may be modified by two singular adjectives: *secundus et tertius ordinēs*, *the second and third ranks*.

416. If the subject denotes a thing, the predicate adjective may be in the neuter, regardless of the gender of the subject: *immānitās sceleris incrēdibile est*, *the enormity of the crime was (an) incredible (thing)*.

417. A predicate adjective is occasionally neuter, when it refers to nouns of different genders.

418. **Agreement with the Sense.**—A predicate adjective may get its gender from the idea suggested by the subject: *pars ex urbe expulsī sunt*, *a part were driven from the city*.

EQUIVALENTS FOR THE ADJECTIVE

419. Where our idiom expects an adjective, we sometimes find:—

1. A Genitive: *amor frātris*, *fraternal love*.
2. An abstract noun with a Genitive: *ex annālīum vetustāte*, *from old records*.
3. An adverb: *tūtō esse*, Cic. Cat. I. 19. 8, *to be safe*.
4. A case of Hendiadys: *mōlem et montēs*, Verg. Aen. I. 61, *massive mountains*.

PECULIARITIES OF THE ADJECTIVE

420. An adjective cannot be used directly with a proper name save as a cognomen: **Alexander Māgnus**, *Alexander the Great*; **L. Caesar, vir fortissimus**, Cic. Cat. IV. 13. 41, *Lucius Caesar, a man most brave*.

421. An adjective may represent a Subjective, an Objective, or a Possessive Genitive: **mortālla facta**, *the deeds of men*; **externae victōriae**, Cic. Cat. IV. 22. 28, *of victory over an enemy*; **domus rēgia**, *the king's house*.

422. Adjectives denote Race: **Miltiadēs Athēniēnsis**, *Miltiades the Athenian*.

423. Such adjectives as **primus**, **medius**, **summus**, **ūltimus**, **extrēmus**, **infimus (imus)** denote parts of the modified word: **summus mōns captus est**, *the top of the mountain was taken*.

424. **Primus**, **prior**, **postrēmus**, and **ūltimus** are often equivalent to a relative clause: **āc prior inquit**, Verg. Aen. I. 321, *and she was the first who spoke*.

425. The Latin often uses a connective between two adjectives where our idiom omits it: **multi et fortēs virī**, *many brave men*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

426. The Comparative is regularly used in contrasting two objects; but sometimes it is equivalent to *too*, *rather*, *somewhat*, *unusually*: **sī qua rēs erat māior**, Cic. Sest. 105. 31, *if there was any matter of unusual importance*.

427. The Superlative often denotes a very high degree of comparison: **homō doctissimus**, *a very learned man*.

428. The Comparative may be intensified by **multō**, **aliquantō**, **paulō**, **etiam**, while the Superlative is intensified by **longē**, **ūnus**, **vel**, **etiam**, **paulō**: **multō māior**, *much greater*; **ūnō māximō**, Cic. Cat. III. 25. 32, *the very greatest*.

429. In comparing two attributes of the same person or thing, the comparative, or **magis** with the positive, is used in both members: **hic homō est dītor quam sapientior**, *this man is richer than wise*.

THE VERB

430. The Passive often has a reflexive force: **nōn fallor**, *I do not deceive myself*; **occāsiō datur**, *the opportunity presents itself*.

431. The Passive of deponent and defective verbs is supplied by the corresponding verbal noun with **esse** or **venire**: **esse admirātiōnī** (**invidiae**, **odiō**), *to be admired (envied, hated)*; **venire in invidiam** (**odium**, **suspiciōnem**), *to be envied (hated, suspected)*.

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

432. 1. The Nominative is expressed only when emphatic: **nōs cōsulēs dēsumus**, Cic. Cat. I. 3. 32, *we consuls are remiss*.

2. The "editorial we" occurs, as in English: **tametsi videō quanta tempestās invidiae nōbis impendat**, Cic. Cat. I. 22. 4, *and yet I see how great a storm of unpopularity threatens us*.

3. **Nostrum** and **vestrum**, which are regularly used as Partitive Genitives, when used with **omnium** take the place of the possessive: **ad omnium nostrum vitam salūtemque**, Cic. Cat. I. 14. 21, *to the life and safety of us all*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

433. 1. The possessive is expressed only when emphatic or when the meaning would be vague without it: **haec meā voluntāte fēcit**, *he did this with my consent*.

2. A Genitive is regularly in apposition with a possessive, **ipsius** being used for special emphasis: **meā ūnīus** (or **ipsius**) **operā haec fēcī**, *I did this unaided*.

3. The possessive is often equivalent to the Genitive of the personal pronoun: **nostrā tamen, quī remānsissēmus, caede tē contentum esse dicēbās**, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 22, *yet you said you were satisfied with the slaughter of us who had remained*.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

434. In simple sentences, **sē** and its possessive **suus** refer to the subject: **Caesar sē ad suōs recēpit**, *Caesar returned to his men* (lit. took himself back to his men).

NOTE. — Distinguish clearly between *self* as a substantive and *self* as an adjective. *Himself* is **ipse** when agreeing with a noun or a pronoun: **Caesar ipse dixit**, *Caesar himself said it*; it is **sē** when a substantive: **sē occīdit**, *he killed himself*.

435. **Mē** and **nōs** are the reflexives of the first person; **tē** and **vōs** of the second.

NOTE. — Where the meaning is clear, **suus**, particularly in connection with **quisque**, may refer to some other word than the subject: **suī cuique mōrēs fingunt fortunam**, *his own character fixes the lot of each one*.

436. With the Accusative and Infinitive construction, **sē** and **suus** refer to the subject of the principal verb: **Caesar dicit sē valēre**, *Caesar says that he is well*.

437. In Final Clauses, Dependent Commands or Questions, reported Descriptions, Conditions, or Causes, with

their verbs in the Subjunctive mood, *sē* or *suus* refers to the subject of the principal clause; in other clauses, it refers to the subject of its own clause: *decima legiō Caesari grātiās ēgit quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset*, Caes. B. G. I. 41, *the tenth legion tendered Caesar its thanks for having formed a high opinion of it*; *eō impetū militēs iērunt ut hostēs sē fugae mandārent*, *the soldiers charged with such impetuosity that the enemy betook themselves to flight*.

438. *Sē* and *suus* are used when the subject is indefinite: *dēforme est dē sē ipsō praedicāre*, *to boast of oneself is bad form*.

RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

439. The Latin has no reciprocal pronoun, but uses *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*, *inter sē*: *virtūs et vitium inter sē differunt*, *virtue and vice differ from one another*.

440. The same idea is expressed by *alius* (of several) and *alter* (of two): *alius aliud videt*, *one sees one thing, another, another*; *alter alterum adiuvat*, *they two help each other*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

441. *Hic* as the Demonstrative of the first person points out something as near the speaker, in time, place, or thought; while *iste* is the regular demonstrative of the second person, and *ille* of the third: *haec urbs*, *this city of ours*; *iste liber*, *that book of yours*; *ille homō*, *that man*.

Hic

442. 1. *Hic* and *ille* often mark a contrast: *hic . . . ille*, *the one . . . the other*; *the latter . . . the former*.

2. *Hic* often, and *ille* sometimes, refers to what follows: *Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit*, Caes. B. G. I. 35, *Caesar sent ambassadors with the following instructions*.

3. **Hic** is used as a demonstrative of the first person: **dē hīs**, Cic. Cat. II. 17. 3, *concerning these*; **tālem hunc**, Cic. Sull. 62. 5, *such a man as this*; **dē hāc coniūratiōne**, Cic. Sull. 14. 3, *concerning this recent conspiracy*.

NOTE.—**Hōc amīcōrum numerō** is regularly used for **hōrum amīcōrum numerō**, *in the number of these friends*.

Ille

443. 1. **Ille** often means *famous, well-known*: **sica illa**, Cic. Cat. II. 1. 10, *that famous dagger of his*.

2. In a long sentence, or in the second of two parallel clauses, attention is often directed to some preceding noun by the insertion of **ille**:—

**Arma virumque canō, Trōiae quī primus ab ōris
Ītaliā, fātō profugus Lāvinaque vēnit**

Lītora multum ille et terris iactātus et altō, Verg. Aen. I. 1–3,
*I sing of arms and the hero who first from the shores of
Troy came, by fate an exile, to Italy and the Lavinian
shores, he, buffeted much both by land and sea.*

Iste

444. **Iste** is regularly applied to an opponent in debate, often in contempt: **istius furōrem**, Cic. Cat. I. 2. 17, *that wretch's fury*.

Is

445. 1. **Is**, *that*, is the determinative pronoun. It is the regular antecedent of the relative: **in eōs quī ea perficere voluērunt**, Cic. Cat. IV. 12. 24, *against those who have wanted to bring that to pass*.

2. **Is** = **tālis**: **neque enim is es**, Cic. Cat. I. 22. 12, *for you are not such a one*.

3. It is a personal pronoun of the third person: *ad eum accurrit, he runs up to him.*

NOTE. — It is often omitted where the English would express it: *ūnam, D. Silānī, Cic. Cat. IV. 7. 1, the one that of Decimus Silanus.*

4. Note the phrase *id quod*, *id* being in apposition with a whole clause: *habētis ūniversum populum Rōmānum, id quod in civili causā hodiernō diē primum vidēmus, ūnum atque idem sentientem, Cic. Cat. IV. 19. 18, you have the whole Roman people thinking one and the same thing, a thing which we see to-day for the first time in a matter of politics.*

5. Note the phrase *et ea*, *and that too*: *et ea per civēs, Cic. Cat. III. 21. 7, and that too through citizens.*

6. *Hic, ille, iste*, and *is* usually take the gender of the predicate noun.

Īdem

446. 1. *Īdem* has the general force of *the same*, used as an adjective or a noun: *nōn eadem est aetās, the age is not the same.*

2. *Īdem* adds an additional predicate: *quidquid ūtile est, idem est honestum, whatever is useful is honorable too.*

3. *Īdem* sometimes has the translation of an adverb: *dixi ego idem, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 15, I also said; et eandem dēlicatam, Cic. Mur. 20. 15, and sensual at that.*

Ipsē

447. *Ipsē* in general expresses Eminence or Emphasis, and gets its force from the context, being often rendered by an emphatic *he*, or *very*, *just*, *precisely*, *in person*. It is used as a noun or an adjective: *rēx ipse Aenēās, Verg. Aen. I. 575, king Aeneas in person; ipse haec vidī, I saw this with my own eyes.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

448. The relative object may be omitted in English, but not in Latin: **vir est quem vidisti**, *he is the man (whom) you saw.*

449. In Latin, the antecedent sometimes has to be expressed: **ex iis quae vidit**, *from what he saw.*

450. The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause with the relative as its attribute: (**Caesar**) **intellēxit diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret**, *Caes. B. G. I. 16, Caesar saw that the day was at hand when corn was to be measured to the soldiers.*

451. The antecedent may be implied in a possessive: **vestrā enim quī cum summā ēlegantīā atque integritāte vixistis**, *Cic. Sull. 79. 26, for in the case of you who have lived with the greatest refinement and blamelessness.*

452. An indefinite antecedent is often omitted: **sunt quī haec dicant**, *there are some who say this.*

INCORPORATION OF THE ANTECEDENT

453. The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the relative clause:—

1. When the relative clause precedes: **quae civitās calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās exsolvit**, *the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the chief one to pay the penalty.*

2. When the antecedent is an appositive: **firmi et cōstantēs amici dēligendī sunt, cūius generis est māgna pēnūria**, *firm and constant friends should be chosen, of which class there is a great scarcity.*

3. When the relative clause gives a personal characteristic as a reason: *quae tua prūdentia est, with your usual foresight.*

4. When the logical antecedent is a superlative: *ex amicis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem misit, he sent to the king the most faithful friend he had.*

454. 1. The relative is occasionally attracted into the case of the antecedent, particularly into the Ablative: *nōs tamen hōc cōfirmāmus illō auguriō, quō diximus, yet we prove this by that augury which we have mentioned.*

2. In poetry the antecedent may be attracted into the case of the relative: *urbem quam statuō vestra est, Verg. Aen. I. 573, the city which I am building is yours.*

455. A relative at the beginning of a clause has the force of a conjunction and a demonstrative: *quā dē causā, and for this reason.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (SEE 84)

456. For *quis*, see 84. 1.

Aliquis, *some one, some*, is more definite than *quis*: *utī ē suis lēgātis aliquem ad sē mitteret, Caes. B. G. I. 47, that he should send him one of his lieutenants.*

457. 1. *Quīdam*, *a certain one*, is even more definite than *aliquis*: *accurrit quīdam, nōtus mihi nōmine tantum, Hor. Sat. I. 9. 3, a certain man runs up, known to me only by name.*

2. With a noun or an adjective *quīdam* modifies a too bold use of language: *et quōdam modō tacita loquitur, Cic. Cat. I. 18. 29, and though silent speaks in a manner, if I may be allowed to use the term.*

458. *Quisquam* is usually found in sentences where a negative is expressed or implied: *neque adhūc repertus est*

quisquam, Caes. B. G. III. 22, *nor so far has any one been found*; **quamdiū quisquam erit**, Cic. Cat. I. 6. 32, *so long as there shall be any one*.

NOTE.—With words denoting persons, Cicero uses **quisquam** as an adjective: **homō liber quisquam**, Cic. Sest. 78. 17, *any free man*.

459. Ūllus has the same use as an adjective that **quisquam** has as a noun: **sine ūllā spē**, *without any hope*. **Ūllus** has also a noun use.

460. Quisque, *each one*, has four common uses:—

1. With the reflexive, **prō sē quisque**, *each one for himself*.
2. With ordinals: **tertiō quōque verbō**, *at every third word*.
3. With relatives and interrogatives: **quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit**, Caes. B. G. IV. 5, *what each one of them has heard about anything*.

4. With superlatives it has a universal force: **nōbilissimī cōiusque liberōs**, Caes. B. G. I. 31, *the children of all the nobles*.

NOTE.—**Quisque** is used of several persons or things; the plural, of groups.

461. Uterque, Ambō.—**Uterque** always has a distinct reference to each of two things; the plural refers to groups, or is used with nouns that are found only in the plural. **Ambō** refers to two objects taken together: **quī utrumque probat, ambōbus dēbuit ūtī**, *he who approves of each ought to have availed himself of both*.

NOTE.—In poetry **ambō** is often used like **duo**.

462. Nēmō, *no one*, is found both with nouns and adjectives: **nēmō mortālis**, *no mortal*; **nēmō civis**, *no citizen*.

463. Cēteri, *the rest*, means *all the others*, while **reliqui** means *the rest of*.

CONJUNCTIONS

464. 1. Coördinating conjunctions join two words or phrases, two principal clauses, or two clauses that depend on the same principal clause.

2. Subordinating conjunctions join the dependent clause to the principal clause.

465. TABLE OF COÖRDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. COPULATIVE, meaning <i>and</i>,
join.
et, -que (enclitic).
āc (before a consonant), atque.
neque for et nōn.</p> <p>2. CORRELATIVE COPULATIVES.
et . . . et, <i>both . . . and</i>.
cum . . . tum, <i>while . . . then</i>.
nec . . . nec } <i>neither . . .</i>
neque . . . neque } <i>nor</i>.</p> <p>3. DISJUNCTIVE, meaning <i>or</i>,
allow a choice.
aut, vel, -ve (enclitic).
nēve or neu when the second
member is negatived.</p> <p>4. CORRELATIVE DISJUNCTIVES,
meaning <i>either . . . or</i>.
vel . . . vel; sive . . . sive;
seu . . . seu; aut . . . aut.</p> <p>5. ADVERSATIVE, meaning <i>but</i>,
denote opposition.
sed, denoting opposition.
autem (postpositive) marks
a transition.</p> | <p>at, introduces an opposing
argument.
atquē, cēterum, quod.
vērūm, stronger than sed.
tamen (usually postpositive).
nē . . . quidem, <i>not even</i>, the
emphatic word coming be-
tween nē and quidem.</p> <p>6. CORROBORATIVE, meaning
<i>also</i>, add additional testi-
mony.
etiam (just before the word
modified).
quoque (postpositive), nec
nōn.
et (with pronouns).</p> <p>7. CAUSAL, meaning <i>for</i>, give
reasons.
nam, enim (postpositive),
etenim.</p> <p>8. ILLATIVE, meaning <i>therefore</i>,
<i>and so</i>, draw conclusions.
ergō, itaque, igitur.</p> |
|--|---|

NOTES. — 1. **-que** and **-ve**, enclitics, are added to the second of two words they join, or to the first word of the second sentence or clause:
arma virumque canō, Verg. Aen. I. 1, *I sing of arms and a hero*;

quid tū es tristis, quidve es alacris? *why are you sad, or why are you cheerful?*

2. **Atque** is a strong connective and usually adds a more important to a less important statement: **dixerat; atque illam . . . aspi-ciunt**, Verg. Aen. IV. 663, *she ceased, and they beheld her*.

466. Note the correlative expressions **nōn solum (modo) . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*; **nōn modo nōn . . . sed nē . . . quidem**, *not only not . . . but not even*; **nōn modo stan-tem non dēfendērunt, sed nē iacentem quidem prōtēxērunt**, Cic. *Sest.* 64. 7, *not only did not defend me standing, but did not protect me fallen*.

467. In such expressions as **nōn modo (solum) nōn . . . sed nē . . . quidem** the latter **nōn** is generally omitted when the two negative clauses have the same verb: **sapiēns vir nōn modo facere, sed nē cōgitāre quidem quicquam audēbit quod nōn honestum sit**, *a wise man will (not) dare not only to do, but not even to think anything that is not honorable*.

468. In enumerations, where the several units are of equal importance, the connective is written between each two, or it may be omitted altogether, or **-que** may be attached to the last: **māgnificē et graviter et animōsē vīvere**, or **māgnificē, graviter, animōsē vīvere**, or **māgnificē, graviter, animōsēque vīvere**, *to live nobly, seriously, boldly*.

469. When **et** or **atque** is placed between *the last two only* of several units, all that precede the connective are to be taken together: **sī L. Catilīna subitō pertimuerit, sententiam mūtāverit, dēseruerit suōs, cōnsilium bellī faciendī abiēcerit et converterit**, Cic. *Cat.* II. 14. 2-7, *now if Catiline not only suddenly becomes frightened, changes his mind, deserts his friends, and gives up his plan of making war, but also turns*.

470. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

1. CAUSE: *because, since, quia, quod, quoniam, cum.* **Quod**, the *fact that*, often introduces an object clause.
2. PURPOSE: *in order that, that, to, ut (nē).*
3. RESULT: *so that, that, so as, ut (ut nōn).*
4. CONDITION: *if, sī.*
5. CONCESSION: *although, quamquam, quamvis, cum.*
6. TIME: *when, cum, ubi, ut; as soon as, cum primum, simul atque; while, dum, donec; until, dum, donec; before, antequam, priusquam; after, postquam.*
Interrogative *when* is **quandō**.

ORDER OF WORDS IN THE SENTENCE

471. The subject, unless an Infinitive, comes first, the predicate, last; the direct object precedes the predicate; the indirect precedes the direct: **Caesar Aeduīs auxilium pollicitus est**, *Caesar promised aid to the Aeduans*. The attributive adjective, Genitive, and appositive usually follow their nouns, while demonstratives and adjectives of quantity and number precede. An adverb or adverbial phrase immediately precedes the word it modifies. A preposition may have an attribute between it and its case, or the attribute may precede both the preposition and its case.

Relatives, interrogatives, and conjunctions introduce the clause in which they stand.

Temporal, causal, concessive, comparative, and conditional clauses precede the principal clause; final and consecutive clauses and indirect questions follow. The common subject or object of the principal and subordinate clause precedes both.

EXAMPLES ILLUSTRATING THE ABOVE PRINCIPLES

Aeduī, Rōmānōrum socii, cum sē suaque dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, *the Aeduans, allies of the Romans,*

since they could not defend themselves and their property, sent ambassadors. (This sentence illustrates the position of the appositive, the causal clause, and the common subject of the principal and subordinate clause): **quibus dē causis, senātus duumvirōs ad eam aedem prō amplitūdine populī Rōmānī faciendam creārī iussit**, *for these reasons the senate ordered a commission of two to be appointed for building that temple in keeping with the dignity of the Roman people.* (This sentence illustrates the position of an attribute with a preposition and its case, of relatives, of attributive adjectives, of demonstratives, of adjectives of number, and of the limiting Genitive): **his rēbus fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur**, *the result was that they could wander less widely* (this sentence shows the position of the result clause and of the adverb). For emphasis, a word is put in some prominent position, usually first or last.

DEVICES TO SECURE EMPHASIS

472. Anáphora repeats the same word or word-order in successive phrases: **nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnitissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra vultūsque movērunt?** Cic. Cat. I. 1. 7, *has the nightly guard on the Palatine moved you in no way; the city watch in no way; the assemblage of all loyal men in no way; this most strongly fortified place of holding the senate in no way; the expression of countenance of all present in no way?* (In translating it is better to break this up into short sentences.)

473. Chiásmus changes the relative order of words in contrasted clauses: **frequentiā cīvium sustentātur, alitur ōtiō**, Cic. Cat. IV. 17. 27, *(business) is sustained by the crowd of citizens, is nurtured by ease.*

The name comes from the criss-cross arrangement suggested by the Greek letter χ : $\begin{matrix} \text{frequenti\textbf{\textit{a}} sustent\textbf{\textit{a}}tur} \\ \text{alit\textbf{\textit{u}}r} \textbf{\textit{o}}\textbf{\textit{t}}\textbf{\textit{i}}\textbf{\textit{o}} \end{matrix}$

474. **Lítotes** is the intentional use of a mild and negative form of expression for a very strong affirmative one: **haud sēgnis**, Verg. Aen. III. 513, *not slothful*. Compare the English: *Shall I praise you in this? I praise you not*, 1 Cor. 11. 22.

475. **Írony** makes a statement with the evident intention of expressing the opposite: **nōs autem fortēs viri**, Cic. Cat. I. 2. 17, *but we, brave men = but we, shame on our cowardice!*

476. **Hypérbole** is rhetorical exaggeration: **occisus est cum liberis**, M. Fulvius, Cic. Cat. I. 4. 6, *Marcus Fulvius was slain with his children* (though in reality but one child was slain).

477. **Aposiopésis**: where the sentence is incomplete, but the sense is clear: **miscēre et tantās audētis tollere mōlēs? Quōs ego —!** Verg. Aen. I. 134, *do you dare to throw into confusion and stir up such masses (of water)? Whom I —!*

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES

FIGURES OF ETYMOLOGY

478. In Figures of Etymology there is a variation from the usual form of a word.

479. **Sýncope** is the omission of one or more letters within the word: **onerārat = onerāverat**, Verg. Aen. I. 195.

480. **Apócope** is the cutting off of a letter at the end of a word: **Pyrrhīn' = Pyrrhīne**, Verg. Aen. III. 319.

481. **Árchaism** is the use of an ancient form: **ollī = illi**, Verg. Aen. I. 254.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX

482. A variation from the usual structure of the sentence is a figure of Syntax.

483. *Asýndeton* is the omission of connectives.

484. *Polysýndeton* is the use of a connective between each two of a series.

485. *Ellipsis* is the omission of one or more words: *Æole, namque . . .*, Verg. Aen. I. 65, *Æolus (on thee I call) for . . .*

NOTE. — This ellipsis with *nam* is common in the Aeneid; see I. 318, 327, 390, 444, 453, 466, 589, 731, 755.

Ellipsis has a comparatively narrow range: —

1. Parts of the verb *to be*, especially *est*, *sunt*, and *esse*.
2. The indefinite antecedent of the relative.
3. When a word has already been used in the context, it may be understood in the same or another form.
4. In familiar phrases a part is sometimes omitted: *verbum sat* = *verbum satis est sapientibus*.

486. *Zeúgma* makes one verb do the duty of two: *inclūsōs . . . Danaōs et . . . laxat claustra*, Verg. Aen. II. 258–9, *releases the imprisoned Greeks and loosens the bars*.

487. *Pléonasm* is unnecessary fullness of expression: *apud mē domī*, Cic. Sest. 41. 19, *at my house at home*.

488. *Hendíadys* is the use of two coördinate nouns instead of one noun with a modifier: *ōra vultūsque*, Cic. Cat. I. 1. 7, *the expression on the faces*.

489. *Anacolúthon* is a break in the regular construction: *utinam dī immortālēs fēcissent (pāce tuā, patria, dixerim; metuō enim nē scelerātē dicam in tē quod prō Milōne dicam piē)*, uti-

nam P. Clōdīus nōn modo viveret, sed etiam praetor, cōsul, dictātor esset potius, quam hōc spectāculum vidērem! Cic. Mil. 103. 1. (Here we would naturally expect to have *ut viveret* depending on the *fēcissent* clause; but instead we have a change in the construction to *utinam viveret*.)

490. **Hýsteron Próteron** inverts the natural order of words and clauses: in *Āfricam redire atque Ītaliā dēcēdere*, Cic. Cat. IV. 21. 16, *to return into Africa and withdraw from Italy*. (Compare our "*I put on my shoes and socks*.")

491. **Prolépsis** anticipates the use of a word: *submersās obrue puppēs*, Verg. Aen. I. 69, *swamp the sunken ships*. (Compare the English "*I know thee who thou art*.")

492. **Tmésis** consists in the separation of the parts of a compound word by some other word or words: *dare braccia circum*, Verg. Aen. II. 792, *to throw his arms around*.

FIGURES OF RHETORIC

493. For **Litotes**, **Irony**, **Hyperbole**, **Apopsiopsis**, see 474-477.

494. **Oxymóron** combines contradictory ideas: *pictūrā pāscit ināni*, Verg. Aen. I. 464, *he feeds on the unsubstantial picture*; *splendidē mendāx*, Hor. Od. III. 11. 35, *gloriously false*.

495. **Alliteration** is a succession of words beginning with the same sound: *cavum conversā cuspide*, Verg. Aen. I. 81.

496. **Onomatopoeia** is accommodation of sound to sense: *luctantēs ventōs tempestātēsque sonōrās*, Verg. Aen. I. 53, *wrestling winds and sounding storms*.

497. **Hypallage** is generally seen in an adjective which is made to agree with a word to which it does not logically belong: *dolentem nōn purpurārum sidere clārior dēlēnit ūsus*, *the use of purple garments more brilliant than a constellation soothes not the sufferer* (here *clārior* agrees with *ūsus*, but logically goes with *purpurārum*).

The essence of this figure is Personification, one of the most common marks of poetic style.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

498. Dates are reckoned from three points: —

1. The Kalends (**Kalendae**), the first of the month.
2. The Nones (**Nōnae**), the fifth; but in March, May, July, October, the seventh.
3. The Ides (**Idūs**), the thirteenth; but in March, May, July, October, the fifteenth.

The names of the months are expressed by adjectives. When used as nouns, *mēnsis*, *month*, is understood; but usually they agree with **Kalendae**, **Nōnae**, **Idūs**.

These adjectives are **Iānuārius**, **Februārius**, **Mārtius**, **Aprīlis**, **Māius**, **Iūnius**, **Iūlius**, **Augustus**, **September**, **Octōber**, **November**, **December**.

NOTE. — The year originally began with March; hence, prior to 46 B.C., **Iūlius** was **Quīntilis** and **Augustus** was **Sextilis**.

499. Intervening days are reckoned as so many days before the following Kalends, Nones, or Ides, as the case may be, both the day of the beginning and the close of the count being included; thus, December 29th is the *fourth day before the Kalends of January*.

500. The day before any one of these periods is **prīdiē**: **prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās** (**prīd. Kal. Ian.**) is *December 31st*.

501. Various methods of indicating dates : —

1. *diē quartō ante Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).
2. *quartō ante Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).
3. *quartō (iv) Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).
4. *ante diem quartum (iv) Nōnās Māiās*, (May 4th).

The last is the most common method.

These phrases may be considered as nouns, and may be preceded by the prepositions *ad*, *ex*, *in* : *ex ante diem tertium Nōnās Iūniās usque ad pridie Kalendās Octōbrēs*, *from June 3d to September 30th*.

502. In letters, the date is placed at the end, and is written in either of two ways : *a. d. vi. Kal. Dec.* (= *ante diem sextum Kalendās Decembrēs*), or *vi. Kal. Dec.* (= *sextō (diē ante) Kalendās Decembrēs*), *November 26th*.

TO PUT A ROMAN DATE INTO ENGLISH

503. For a date preceding the Nones or Ides, add *one* to the date on which the Nones or the Ides fall and subtract the given numeral : *a. d. iii. Nōn. Decembr.*, Cic. Ep. Att. I. 13, *December 3d*; *tertiō Idūs Februār.*, Cic. Ep. Att. V. 21, *February 11th*.

504. In Leap year, the extra day in February was the 25th, designated as *ante diem bis. vi. Kal. Mārt.*, while the 24th was *ante diem vi. Kal. Mārt.*

505. For a date preceding the Kalends, add *two* to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given numeral : *meministine mē ante diem xii. Kalendās Novembrēs dicere?* Cic. Cat. I. 7. 10, *do you not remember that on the 21st of October I said?* *dixi . . . tē caedem . . . contulisse in ante diem v. Kalendās Novembrēs*, Cic. Cat. I. 7. 16, *I said that you had set the massacre for October 28th*.

506.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

DAY OF MONTH	MARCH, MAY, JULY, OCTOBER. 31 days	JANUARY, AUGUST, DECEMBER. 31 days	APRIL, JUNE, SEPT., NOV. 30 days	FEBRUARY. 28 days
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a. d. vi.		a. d. iv.	Nōnās
3	a. d. v.		a. d. iii.	
4	a. d. iv.		prīdiē	
5	a. d. iii.	Nōnis	Nōnis	Nōnis
6	prīdiē		a. d. viii.	Īdūs
7	Nōnis		a. d. vii.	
8	a. d. viii.		a. d. vi.	
9	a. d. vii.		a. d. v.	Īdūs
10	a. d. vi.		a. d. iv.	
11	a. d. v.		a. d. iii.	
12	a. d. iv.	Īdibus	prīdiē	Īdibus
13	a. d. iii.		Īdibus	Īdibus
14	prīdiē	a. d. xix.	a. d. xviii.	a. d. xvi.
15	Īdibus	a. d. xviii.	a. d. xvii.	a. d. xv.
16	a. d. xvii.	a. d. xvii.	a. d. xvi.	a. d. xiv.
17	a. d. xvi.	a. d. xvi.	a. d. xv.	a. d. xiii.
18	a. d. xv.	a. d. xv.	a. d. xiv.	a. d. xii.
19	a. d. xiv.	a. d. xiv.	a. d. xiii.	a. d. xi.
20	a. d. xiii.	a. d. xiii.	a. d. xii.	a. d. x.
21	a. d. xii.	a. d. xii.	a. d. xi.	a. d. ix.
22	a. d. xi.	a. d. xi.	a. d. x.	a. d. viii.
23	a. d. x.	a. d. x.	a. d. ix.	a. d. vii.
24	a. d. ix.	a. d. ix.	a. d. viii.	a. d. vi.
25	a. d. viii.	a. d. viii.	a. d. vii.	a. d. v. (vi.)
26	a. d. vii.	a. d. vii.	a. d. vi.	a. d. iv. (v.)
27	a. d. vi.	a. d. vi.	a. d. v.	a. d. iii. (iv.)
28	a. d. v.	a. d. v.	a. d. iv.	prīdiē (iii.)
29	a. d. iv.	a. d. iv.	a. d. iii.	(prīdiē)
30	a. d. iii.	a. d. iii.	prīdiē	Inclosed forms () are for leap year
31	prīdiē	prīdiē		

PRAENOMINA



507. A Roman had three names, a **praenōmen**, a **nōmen**, a **cōgnōmen**. The **praenōmen** was the personal name; the **nōmen** was the name of the **gēns**; and the **cōgnōmen** was the family name: thus, in **Pūblius Vergilius Marō**, **Pūblius** is the individual of the **gēns** known as Vergilian and of the family Maro.

508. Praenōmina and their abbreviations:—

A.	= Aulus	M'	= Mānius
App.	= Appius	N.	= Numerius
C.	= Gāius	P.	= Pūblius
Cn.	= Gnaeus	Q.	= Quīntus
D.	= Decimus	Ser.	= Servius
K.	= Kaesō	S. or Sex.	= Sextus
L.	= Lūcius	Sp.	= Spurius
Mam.	= Māmercus	T.	= Titus
M.	= Mārcus	Ti.	= Tiberius

VERSIFICATION

509. Latin Versification is based on Quantity. Syllables are harmoniously combined into feet and feet into verses. A Latin verse, then, is a regular combination of long and short syllables.

510. The metrical unit is the short syllable (∪ or ) . A long syllable (— or ) is equivalent to two short syllables.

511. Ictus is the prominence given the long syllable in every foot. The syllable receiving the ictus is the Thesis; the rest of the foot the Arsis.

PRINCIPAL FEET

512. Dactyl, — ∪ ∪ ; Spondee, — — ; Anapaest, ∪ ∪ — ; Iambus, ∪ — ; Trochee, — ∪ .

513. The different kinds of verse take the name of the foot which is their basis; as, Anapaestic, Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic.

FIGURES OF PROSODY

514. Elision is the omission of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*. If the second of the two words is **est**, its vowel is lost and the two words are run together in pronunciation.

515. Hiátus, omission of Elision, occurs when one word ends in a vowel and the next begins with a vowel or *h*.

516. Diástole is the lengthening of a short syllable to its original quantity.

517. Sýstole is the shortening of a long syllable to its original quantity.

518. Hardening is giving the vowels *i* and *u* their consonantal force. For Syncope and Tmesis, see **480** and **492**.

519. Synizésis or **Synaéresis** is the union of two vowels by a slur.

520. Synaphéia is the elision of a final short vowel before the initial vowel of the next line.

521. Caesúra is the ending of a word within a foot. In dactylic hexameter, the principal or masculine caesura falls after the thesis of the foot, while the feminine caesura comes between the short syllables of the foot. The usual caesura is in the third foot.

522. Diaéresis is the pause which occurs when the end of a word and the end of a foot coincide. In hexameter verse, the diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot is called the Bucolic diaeresis.

DACTYLIC (HEROIC) HEXAMETER

523. The Dactylic Hexameter in theory contains six Dactyls, but a spondee often takes the place of the dactyl in the first four feet. The sixth foot may be a spondee or a trochee.

If the fifth foot is a spondee, the verse is called spondaic.

SCANNING OR RHYTHMICAL READING

524. In Latin, as in English, scanning must be by *blocks*.

Ārmă vī|rūmqŭē cǎ|nō || Trō|iaē quī | prīmŭs āb | ōrīs
 Ītālī|ām || fā|tō prōfŭ|gŭs || Lā|vīnăquē | vēnīt
 Lītōră | mŭlt(um) il|l(e) ēt tēr|rīs || iāc|tātŭs ēt | āltō
 Vī sŭpē|rŭm || sǎe|vǎe mēmō|rēm || Iū|nōnīs ōb | irām,
 Mŭltă quō|qu(e) ēt bēl|lō || pās|sŭs || dŭm | cōndērēt | ūrbēm
 Īnfēr|rētquē dē|ōs Lăti|ō || gēnŭs | ūndē Lă|tīnŭm
 Ālbā|nīquē pǎ|trēs || āt|qu(e) āltāē | mōēnă | Rōmae.

Verg. Aen. I. 1-7.

NOTE. — In the metrical scheme given above, the marks of quantity (—, ∪) refer to the syllable; the accent above the line indicates the Ictus; the vertical line marks the division into feet, while the parallel lines mark the Caesural pause.

525. Points to remember in Dactylic Hexameter: —

1. The first syllable of each foot must be long.
2. A syllable between two long syllables must be long.
3. Except at the end of a line, a short syllable must be preceded or followed by a short syllable.

EXAMPLE OF HIATUS

Pōsthābī|tā cōlū|īssē || Sā|mō: hīc | īlīūs | ārmā, Verg. Aen. I. 16,

(the hiatus consists in not eliding the final vowel of **Sāmō** before **hīc**).

ELEGIAC DISTICH

526. The Elegiac Distich consists of a dactylic hexameter and a pentameter. The pentameter may be considered as a hexameter which has lost the arsis of the third and sixth feet: — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | ⊔ || — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∅.

The mark (⊔) indicates a long syllable (two units) prolonged to the value of four; ∅ indicates the lack of two units at the end.

ROMAN MEASURES

MONEY

527. Up to about 268 B.C. the unit was the **ās**, a copper coin, in theory equal to a pound (**libra**), and divided into twelve **ūnciae**. The **sēstertius** (**HS** or **IIS**), a silver coin, equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ **ās**sēs, then became the unit, though the **dēnārius**, equal to 4 sesterces, was the coin in most common use.

Rules for stating Sums of Money

528. 1. Up to 1000 sesterces, use a cardinal with **sēs-tertiī**: **decem sēstertiī**, *10 sesterces*.

2. From 2000 to 900,000, use a distributive with **sēstertia**: **dēna sēstertia** (**mīlia** being understood) *10,000 sesterces*.

3. From 1,000,000 sesterces upwards, use an adverbial with **sēstertium** (**centēna mīlia** being understood): **decīēs sēstertium**, *1,000,000 sesterces*.

NOTES. — 1. **Sēstertium** was a sum of money, not a coin. It was the Genitive plural of **sēstertius**, but was also declined as if it were a neuter noun.

2. The bullion value of a **sēstertius** was about four cents.

529. Interest. — Interest was counted by the month, at so many hundredths of the principal: **ūsūrae bīnae centēsimae**, *two per cent per month*. Lower rates were expressed by fractions of the **ās**: **ūsūrae sēmisse**, *one-half per cent per month*.

530. LENGTH

1 **pēs** = 11.65 inches

1 **passus** = 5 **pedēs**

mīlle passuum = 1 mile = 5000 **pedēs** = 4850 English feet

The unit of measure of land was the **iūgerum**, 240 feet long and 120 feet broad

531. CAPACITY

1 **sextārius** = almost 1 pint

1 **congius** = 6 **sextārii**

1 **modius** = 16 **sextārii**

1 **amphora** = 8 **congi**

532. ABBREVIATIONS

Aed. = aedilis

I.O.M. = Iovi optimō mǎximō

A.U. = annō urbis

Leg. = lēgātus

A.U.C. = ab urbe conditā

O.M. = optimus mǎximus

Cos. = cōsul or cōsule

P.C. = patrēs cōscripti

Coss. = cōsulēs or cōsulibus

Pont. Max. = pontifex mǎximus

Des. = dēsignātus

Pr. = praetor

Imp. = imperātor

Pro. = prōcōsul

P.R. = populus Rōmānus

Q.B.F.F.Q.S. = quod bonum fēlix faustumque sit

Quir. = Quiritēs

Resp. = rēs pūblica

S. = senātus

S.C. = senātus cōsultum

S.P.Q.R. = senātus populusque Rōmānus

S.V.B.E.E.V. = sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō

Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plēbis

CATALOGUE OF VERBS

Compounds are treated with the Simple Verb

A

abnuō, 121. 1
 aboleō, 113. 1
 acuō, 121. 2
 adipīscor, 136. 13
 adolēscō, 119. 14
 adsentior, 137. 1
 advesperāscit, 145. 2
 agō, 117. 1
 algeō, 112. 2
 alō, 120. 1
 amō, 109. 1
 amplector, 136. 6
 angō, 127. 1
 aperiō, 132. 1
 arceō, 114. 1
 arcessō, 119. 10
 ārdeō, 112. 1
 ārēscō, 120. 2
 arguō, 121. 3
 audiō, 131. 1
 augeō, 112. 3
 aveō, 115. 1

C

cadō, 116. 1
 caedō, 116. 2
 caleō, 114. 2
 calēscō, 147. 1
 candeō, 121. 4
 canō, 116. 3; 120. 3
 capessō, 119. 11
 capiō, 123. 1
 careō, 114. 3
 carpō, 118. 1
 caveō, 111. 1
 cēdō, 118. 2

D

-cellō, 116. 19
 cēnseō, 114. 4
 cernō, 119. 1
 cieō, 113. 2
 cingō, 118. 3
 claudō, 118. 4
 coalēscō, 147. 1
 coepī, 144. 6
 colō, 120. 4
 comminīscor, 136. 14
 comperiō, 128. 1
 compēscō, 120. 6
 condolēscō, 147. 1
 congruō, 121. 5
 cōnsenēscō, 120. 7
 cōnsidō, 121. 31
 cōnsulō, 120. 8
 conticēscō, 147. 1
 convalēscō, 147. 1
 coquō, 118. 5
 crēdō, 116. 4
 crepō, 109. 2
 crēscō, 119. 15
 cubō, 109. 3
 -cumbō, 120. 5
 cupiō, 125. 1
 currō, 116. 5

decet, 145. 1
 dēdecet, 145. 1
 dēfendō, 121. 6
 dēfetīscor, 136. 24
 dēleō, 113. 3
 dīcō, 118. 6
 discō, 116. 6
 dītēscō, 147. 2
 dīvidō, 118. 8

dō, 107. 1; 116. 7
 doceō, 114. 5
 doleō, 114. 6
 domō, 109. 4
 dūcō, 118. 9

E

edō, 117. 2
 egeō, 114. 20
 ēmineō, 114. 21
 emō, 117. 3
 ēnecō, 109. 5
 eō, 142
 ēsuriō, 133. 2
 ēvānēscō, 147. 2
 exārdēscō, 147. 1
 excūdō, 121. 8
 expērgīscor, 136. 15
 expērior, 137. 2
 exuō, 121. 7

F

facessō, 121. 9
 faciō, 123. 2
 fallō, 116. 8
 farciō, 130. 1
 fateor, 135. 2
 faveō, 111. 2
 feriō, 133. 1
 ferō, 140
 ferveō, 111. 9
 figō, 118. 11
 findō, 116. 20
 fingō, 118. 12
 fiō, 143
 flectō, 118. 13
 fleō, 113. 4

flīgō, 118. 14
 flōreō, 114. 22
 flōrēscō, 147. 1
 fluō, 118. 15
 fodiō, 123. 3
 foveō, 111. 3
 frangō, 117. 4
 fremō, 120. 10
 fricō, 109. 6
 frigeō, 115. 2
 fruor, 136. 1
 fugiō, 123. 4
 fulciō, 130. 2
 fulgeō, 112. 4
 fundō, 117. 5
 fungor, 136. 2

G

gemō, 120. 11
 gerō, 118. 16
 gignō, 120. 12
 gradior, 136. 11
 grandinat, 145. 2

H

habeō, 114. 7
 haereō, 112. 5
 hauriō, 130. 3
 horreō, 114. 23
 horrēscō, 147. 1

I (vowel)

icō, 121. 10
 ignēscō, 147. 2
 imbuō, 121. 11
 immineō, 115. 3
 incessō, 119. 12
 indulgeō, 112. 7
 induō, 121. 12
 irāscor, 136. 16

I (consonant)

iaceō, 114. 8
 iaciō, 123. 5
 iubeō, 112. 6
 iungō, 118. 17
 iuvō, 108. 1

L

lābor, 136. 7
 laccessō, 119. 13
 -laciō, 124. 1; 126. 1
 laedō, 118. 18
 lateō, 114. 24
 lavō, 108. 2
 legō, 117. 6
 libet, 145. 1
 licet, 145. 1
 linō, 119. 2
 linguō, 117. 7
 liquēscō, 147. 1
 loquor, 136. 3
 lūceō, 112. 8
 lūdō, 118. 19
 lugeo, 112. 9
 luō, 121. 13

M

maereō, 115. 4
 mālō, 141
 mandō, 121. 14
 maneō, 112. 10
 mātūrēscō, 147. 2
 memini, 144. 6
 mereō, 114. 9
 mergō, 118. 20
 mētiōr, 137. 5
 metō, 120. 13
 metuō, 121. 15
 micō, 109. 7
 minuō, 121. 16
 misceō, 114. 10
 miseret, 145. 1
 mittō, 118. 21
 molō, 120. 14
 moneō, 114. 11
 mordeō, 110. 1
 morior, 136. 10
 moveō, 111. 4
 mulceō, 112. 11

N

nancīscor, 136. 17
 nāscor, 136. 18
 nectō, 118. 22
 ningit, 145. 2

niteō, 114. 25
 nitor, 136. 8
 noceō, 114. 12
 nōlō, 141
 nōscō, 119. 16
 nūbō, 118. 23

O

obdūrēscō, 147. 2
 oblivīscor, 136. 19
 obmūtēscō, 147. 2
 obsolēscō, 119. 17
 oculō, 120. 15
 ōdī, 144. 6
 offendō, 121. 17
 oleō, 114. 26
 operiō, 132. 2
 oportet, 145. 1
 opperīor, 137. 2
 ōrdior, 137. 3
 orior, 137. 4

P

pacīscor, 136. 20
 pānitet, 145. 1
 palleō, 114. 27
 pandō, 121. 18
 pangō, 117. 8
 parcō, 116. 9
 pārēō, 114. 13
 pariō, 122
 partior, 137
 pāscō, 119. 18
 pateō, 114. 28
 patior, 136. 12
 paveō, 111. 5
 pellō, 116. 10
 pendēō, 110. 2
 pendō, 116. 11
 petō, 119. 3
 piget, 145. 1
 pingō, 118. 24
 placeō, 114. 14
 plangō, 118. 25
 plaudō, 118. 26
 pleō, 113. 5
 plicō, 109. 9
 pluit, 145. 2

polleō, 115. 5
 pōnō, 120. 16
 poscō, 116. 12
 possidō, 121. 32
 pōtō, 109. 8
 prandeō, 111. 10
 prehēdō, 121. 19
 premō, 118. 27
 proficiscor, 136. 21
 pudet, 145. 1
 pungō, 116. 13; 118. 28

Q

quaerō, 119. 4
 quatiō, 124. 3
 queror, 136. 4
 quiēscō, 119. 19

R

rādō, 118. 29
 rapio, 126. 2
 rēfert, 145. 1
 regō, 118. 30
 reor, 135. 1
 reperiō, 128. 2
 rēpō, 118. 31
 rīdēō, 112. 12
 rōdō, 118. 32
 rumpō, 117. 9
 ruō, 121. 20

S

saepiō, 130. 4
 saliō, 132. 3
 sancio, 130. 7
 sapiō, 125. 2
 sarcio, 130. 6
 scalpō, 118. 33
 scandō, 121. 21
 scindō, 116. 21
 sciscō, 119. 20

scribō, 118. 34
 sculpō, 118. 35
 secō, 109. 10
 sedeō, 111. 6
 sentiō, 130. 5
 sepeliō, 131. 2
 sequor, 136. 5
 serō, 119. 5
 serpō, 118. 36
 sileō, 114. 29
 sinō, 119. 6
 sistō, 116. 14
 solvō, 121. 22
 sonō, 109. 11
 spargō, 118. 37
 -speciō, 124. 2
 spernō, 119. 7
 spondeō, 110. 3
 statuō, 121. 23
 sternō, 119. 8
 -stinguō, 118. 38
 stō, 107. 2
 strepō, 120. 17
 stringō, 118. 39
 struō, 118. 40
 studeō, 114. 30
 stupeō, 114. 31
 suādēō, 112. 13
 suēscō, 119. 21
 sūgō, 118. 41
 sum, 93
 suō, 121. 24

T

taceō, 114. 15
 taedet, 145. 1
 tangō, 116. 15
 tegō, 118. 42
 temnō, 118. 43
 tendō, 116. 16
 teneō, 114. 16
 tergeō, 112. 14
 terō, 119. 9
 terreō, 114. 17

texō, 120. 18
 timō, 114. 32
 tingō, 118. 44
 tollō, 116. 22
 tondeō, 110. 4
 tonō, 109. 12
 torqueō, 112. 15
 torreō, 114. 18
 trahō, 118. 45
 tremō, 120. 19
 tribuō, 121. 25
 trūdō, 118. 46
 tundō, 116. 17

U

ulciscor, 136. 22
 ung(u)ō, 118. 47
 urgeō, 112. 16
 ūrō, 118. 48
 ūtor, 136. 9

V

vādō, 118. 49
 valeō, 114. 19
 vehō, 118. 50
 -vellō, 121. 26
 vēndō, 116. 18
 veniō, 129
 vergō, 127. 2
 -verrō, 121. 27
 vertō, 121. 28
 vescor, 136. 23
 vetō, 109. 13
 videō, 111. 7
 vigeō, 114. 33
 vincio, 130. 8
 vincō, 117. 10
 visō, 121. 29
 vīvō, 118. 51
 volō, 141
 volvō, 121. 30
 vomō, 120. 20
 voveō, 111. 8

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL REFERENCES

Allen and Greenough	Mooney	Allen and Greenough	Mooney	Allen and Greenough	Mooney	Allen and Greenough	Mooney
1	2: 3	36, <i>a, b</i>	33, N. 1	62	29	87, <i>a</i>	66, Exc.
2	4	36, <i>c</i>	29	63, <i>a</i>	52, 2		2 and 3
2, 1-3	8	36, <i>d</i>	33, N. 3	63, <i>c</i>	52, 1	87, <i>b</i>	65, 4
8	8	36, <i>e</i>	33, N. 2	63, <i>f</i>	52, 2	87, <i>c</i> and <i>d</i>	66
4	2	37	34	63, <i>g</i>	52, 4	87, <i>f</i>	66,
5	16	37, <i>a</i>	34, N.	63, <i>h</i>	52, 3		Exc. 5
7	9, 4: 35.	37, <i>b</i>	34	63, <i>i</i>	52, 4	88, <i>a</i>	412, 5
	N. 1	38	35	64	52, 5-7	88, <i>c</i>	66, 6
10, <i>a</i>	9, 1 and 2	39	35	65, <i>a</i>	50, 1	88, <i>d</i>	149, 1
10, <i>b</i>	10, 1	39, <i>b</i>	37	65, <i>b</i>	50, 2		and 2
10, <i>c</i>	10, 3	40, <i>a</i>	29	65, <i>c</i>	50, 3	89	68: 69
10, <i>d</i>	10, 2	40, <i>b</i>	36, 1	68	53	89, <i>a</i>	69, 1
11, <i>a</i>	11, 8		and 2	69, <i>a</i>	54, 3		and 2
11, <i>b</i>	11, 4 and	40, <i>c</i>	36, 3	69, <i>b</i>	53	89, <i>b</i>	69, 3
	5	40, <i>e</i>	36, 6	70, <i>a</i>	54, 4	89, <i>c</i>	69, 4
11, <i>e, i</i> and	6, 7: 11,	40, <i>f</i>	36, 4	70, <i>d</i>	54, 1	89, <i>d</i>	70, 1
2	1-4: 12	41	35, 3	70, <i>f</i>	54, 2	90	69, 6
14	14	41, <i>b</i>	35	72	55	91, <i>a</i>	71, 1
14, <i>a</i>	14, 1	41, <i>c</i>	35, 2	73	55, 1	91, <i>b</i>	71, 1
14, <i>b</i>	14, 2		and 3	74, <i>a</i>	55, 4		and 4
14, <i>c</i>	14, 3	42	35, 2	74, <i>b</i>	58, 2	91, <i>c</i>	71, 3
16	5: 6: 7	43	38	74, <i>d</i>	55, 2	91, <i>d, 1</i>	71, 1
18, <i>a</i>	16	43, <i>a</i>	52, 3	75	56, 1	91, <i>d, 2</i>	71, 2
18, <i>c</i>	17, 4	43, <i>b</i>	36, 5:	76, 1	56, 2	91, <i>d, 3</i>	71, 3
18, <i>d</i>	17, 5:		38	76, 2 and 3	56, 3	92	152:
	16, 4	44	41, 2	77	61		152, 2
18, <i>e</i>	17, 3	45	41, 3	78	58: 59	93, <i>a</i>	426:
18, <i>f</i>	16, 2	46	42: 43	79, <i>a</i>	57		428
19	15	47	42: 43	80, <i>a-c</i>	507	93, <i>b</i>	427:
21	30	48	44: 45	80, <i>d</i>	508		428
22	156	49	44: 45	81	63, 1-3	93, <i>c</i>	460, 4
25-27	24	50	49, 6	81, <i>a</i>	63, 6	94	72
28	26	51	47	82	63, 4	94, <i>a</i>	74
29, <i>a, b,</i>	27, 1	51, <i>a</i>	47, 1	82, N.	63, 5	94, <i>b</i>	73
29, <i>c</i>	28, 3	52	47	83	64, 1-5	94, <i>c</i>	73: 74, 3
30	27, 2	54	47, 2	83, <i>a</i>	64, 1	94, <i>d</i>	73
31	29	55, <i>a</i>	49, 6	84	65: 65,	94, <i>e</i>	74, 2
32	31	55, <i>b</i>	49, 5		3	94, <i>f</i>	73
32, <i>a</i>	30	56	49, 1-3	84, <i>a</i>	65, 1	95	72
33	32	57	49, 4	84, <i>b</i>	66	96	72
34	35: 39:	60, <i>a</i>	47	85, <i>a</i> and <i>b</i>	65, 4	97, <i>d, N.</i>	529
	53	60, <i>b</i>	47	86	65, 6	98, 1 and <i>a</i>	77
85	33	61	47	86, <i>b</i>	65, N.	98, <i>b</i>	432, 2

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
98, 2, <i>a</i>	79	111, <i>c</i>	89, 1	131	95: 96:	154, <i>b</i> , 1, 2	470, 4
and <i>b</i>		112, <i>a</i>	318, 1-3		99	154, <i>b</i> , 3	470, 5
98, 3	78: 78,	112, <i>b</i>	321 ff.	132	95: 96	154, <i>b</i> , 4	470, 6
	N. 2	112, <i>c</i>	319	134	146	154, <i>b</i> , 5	470, 3
98, 8, N.	78, N. 1	112, <i>d</i>	261	135	97	154, <i>b</i> , 6	470, 2
99, <i>a</i>	433, 3	113, <i>a</i>	282	135, <i>b</i>	89, 2	155	465: 470
99, <i>b</i>	77, 1	113, <i>b</i>	283	136	89, 1	156, <i>a</i>	465, 1 and
99, <i>c</i>	216, 5	113, <i>b</i> , N.	98, 1	137, <i>a</i>	93		465, N. 2
99, <i>d</i>	439: 440	113, <i>b</i> , 2	98	137, <i>b</i>	138	156, <i>b</i>	465, 5
99, <i>e</i>	77, 4: 79,	113, <i>c</i> , 1	282	138	141	156, <i>c</i>	465, 3 and
	N.	113, <i>c</i> , N.	280	139	140		4
99, <i>f</i>	77, 2 and	113, <i>d</i>	295, 1	140	139	156, <i>d</i>	465, 7
	3: 78, 3	113, <i>d</i> , N.	98, 2	141	142	156, <i>e</i>	465, 8
100	80	114, <i>a</i>	288	141, <i>a</i>	142, N. 1	156, <i>f</i>	470, 1
101	80: 81	114, <i>a</i> , N.	288	141, <i>b</i>	142, N. 2	156, <i>h</i>	465, 3 and
101, N.	80, N.	114, <i>b</i>	301: 302	142	143		4
102, <i>a</i>	80: 422,	115	303: 304	142, <i>a</i>	100, 6	156, <i>i</i>	378, 5 and
	1-3	115, <i>a</i>	305, 6:	142, <i>b</i>	123, 2		N.
102, <i>b</i>	80: 443,		306, 4	143, <i>a, b, c</i>	144, 6	156, <i>k</i>	465, 5 and
	1	115, <i>b</i>	306, 1	143, <i>c</i> , N.	307, N.		7
102, <i>c</i>	80: 444	115, <i>c</i>	307, 1 and	144, <i>a</i>	144, 1	p. 104	155
102, <i>d</i>	80: 445,		2	144, <i>b</i>	144, 2	162, <i>a</i>	161, 2
	1-3	115, <i>d</i>	314	144, <i>c</i>	144, 4	163, <i>a</i>	161, 1
102, <i>e</i>	447	116	91	144, <i>d</i>	144, 3	163, <i>b</i>	161, 4 and
103	82	119	93	144, <i>f</i>	144, 5		N.
104	83	120	93	144, <i>g</i>	142, 3	163, <i>c</i>	161, 5
104, <i>a</i>	83: 84	121	90	145	145	163, <i>d</i>	161, 5:
104, <i>a</i> , N.	83, 2	121, <i>a</i>	90, 1	146, <i>a</i>	145, 2		161, 3
104, <i>c</i>	82, 1: 83,	121, <i>b</i>	90, 2	146, <i>b</i>	145, 1	163, <i>e</i>	160
	1	121, <i>c</i>	90, 3	146, <i>c</i>	145, 3	163, <i>f</i>	159, 3
104, <i>d</i>	82, 1	122	92, 1	146, <i>d</i>	205, N.	164, <i>a</i>	159, 1
104, <i>e</i>	258, 3 and	122, <i>a</i>	92, 1	147	98	164, <i>b</i>	159, 4
	N.	122, <i>b</i>	92, 3	148, <i>a</i>	148, 1	164, <i>c</i>	163, 2 and
105, <i>a</i>	82, 2	123	102: 103	148, <i>b</i>	148, 2		5: 164,
105, <i>b</i>	82, 3	124, <i>a</i>	104, 3	148, <i>c</i>	148, 2 and		1 and 5
105, <i>c</i>	84, 3-6.	124, <i>b</i>	104, 2		N.	164, <i>d</i>	163, 2
105, <i>d</i>	84, 1 and	124, <i>c</i>	104, 4	148, <i>d</i>	149, 1	164, <i>e</i>	163, 6:
	2	124, <i>c</i> , N.	104, N. 1	149	151		166, 1
105, <i>h</i>	84, 4	124, <i>d</i>	104, 1	151, <i>a</i>	465, 6	164, <i>f</i>	163, 4
105, <i>i</i>	83, 3	125	105	151, <i>b</i>	465, 2	164, <i>g</i>	163, 1 and
106	85: 151	127	94	151, <i>e</i>	465, 5		2
108	88	128, <i>a</i>	100, 1	152, <i>a</i>	258, 1	164, <i>h</i>	163, 2
108, <i>a</i> and	88, 1	128, <i>b</i>	101, 4	152, <i>b</i>	258, 3	164, <i>i</i> , 8	159, 2
<i>b</i>		128, <i>c</i>	100, 6	152, <i>c</i>	258, 4	164, <i>i</i> , 6	159, 2
108, <i>c</i>	88, 2	128, <i>e</i> , 1	101, 2	154, <i>a</i>	464, 1	164, <i>i</i> , 8	159, 2
108, <i>d</i>	88, 3	128, <i>e</i> , 2	101, 1	154, <i>a</i> , 1	465, 1 and	164, <i>k</i>	163, 3
109	88, 1	128, <i>e</i> , 3	101, 3		8	164, <i>l</i>	162, 2 and
110, <i>c</i>	320	128, <i>e</i> , 4	101, 5	154, <i>a</i> , 2	465, 5		4
111	87, 1	128, p. 72	95	154, <i>a</i> , 3	465, 7	164, <i>m</i>	162, 3
111, <i>a</i>	188	129	98: 96	154, <i>a</i> , 4	465, 8	164, <i>p</i>	162, 1
111, <i>b</i>	89	130	95: 96	154, <i>b</i> ,	464, 2	166, <i>a</i>	158, 1

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
166, <i>b</i>	158, 1	194, <i>a</i>	432, 1	205	175, 1	216, <i>c</i>	225, N. 2
166, <i>d</i>	158, 2	194, <i>b</i>	432, 3:	205, <i>a</i>	176	216, <i>d</i>	225, N. 4
167, <i>a</i>	147		216, 5	205, <i>b</i>	175, 4	216, <i>e</i>	225, N. 3
167, <i>b</i>	157, 1	195	182	205, <i>c</i>	174, 6	217	216, 1
167, <i>d</i>	157, 4	195, <i>a</i>	445, 3	206, <i>a</i>	432, 1	217, <i>a</i>	421
167, <i>e</i>	157, 3	195, <i>b</i>	445, N.	206, <i>b</i>	172, 3	217, <i>c</i>	216, 2
168, <i>b</i>	167	195, <i>c</i>	445, 5	206, <i>c</i>	485, 1	218	226, 1
168, <i>c</i>	169, 1	195, <i>d</i>	445, 6	207, <i>b</i>	258, 2 and 3	218, <i>a</i>	226, 1
168, <i>d</i>	170, 1 and 2	195, <i>e</i>	446, 3			218, <i>b</i>	226, 2
		195, <i>f, g,</i>		207, <i>b, N.</i>	258, 2 and 3	218, <i>b, N. 1</i>	226, 2
169, <i>b</i>	168, 3	<i>h, i, k, l</i>	447			219	227, 1
170, <i>a</i>	168, 3	196	434	208	465, 1 and 3	219, <i>a</i>	227, 2
170, <i>a, N.</i>	168, N. 1	196, <i>a, 1</i>	437			219, <i>b</i>	227, 3
170, <i>b</i>	153, 2	196, <i>a, 2</i>	436	208, <i>b</i>	483:468	219, <i>c</i>	227, 4
170, <i>c</i>	170, 3	196, <i>c</i>	435, N.	208, <i>c</i>	425	219, <i>c, N.</i>	227, 4
170, <i>d</i>	168, 3	196, <i>e</i>	438	208, <i>d</i>	465, 2 and 4	220	228
173, 1	171	196, <i>f</i>	439			220, <i>b, 1</i>	251
173, 2	266	196, <i>h</i>	435	209, <i>c</i>	474	220, <i>b, 2</i>	228, N.
174	171	196, <i>i</i>	435, N.	209, <i>d</i>	386, N.	221	229
175, <i>a</i> and <i>b</i>	87, 2	197	78	209, <i>e</i>	361, N.	221, <i>a</i>	229
176, <i>a</i>	173, 1 and 3	197, <i>a</i>	433, 3	210, <i>a</i>	385, 1	221, <i>b</i>	229
		197, <i>c</i>	433, 1	210, <i>c</i>	385, 3	221, <i>c</i>	229, N. 2
176, <i>b</i>	174, 2	197, <i>e</i>	433, 2	210, <i>d</i>	385, 2	222	230, 1
183	179	198	182, 1	210, <i>e</i>	384, 1	222, <i>a</i>	230, 2
184	179	198, <i>a</i>	182, 3	210, <i>f</i>	83, 3	223 and N.	231
184, <i>a</i>	180, 1	199	182, 4	211	385, 5	223, <i>a</i>	231
184, <i>b</i>	179	199, <i>a</i>	454, 1	211, Rem.	390, 3	223, <i>e</i>	218, 1 and 2: 258, 2 and 3
184, <i>c</i>	242, 3	199, <i>b</i>	451	211, <i>b</i>	385, 5		
184, <i>d</i>	433, 2	199, <i>b, N.</i>	451	212	386, 1 and 2	224	201
185, <i>a</i>	174, 2	200 and <i>a</i>	450			225	201
185, <i>b</i>	175, 1	200, <i>c</i>	452	212, <i>a, 1</i>	386, 1	225, <i>b, 3</i>	213
186	178	200, <i>e</i>	445, 4	212, <i>a, 2</i>	386, 2	225, <i>d</i>	203
186, <i>d</i>	178, 2	201, <i>a</i>	448	212, <i>b,</i>		226	205
187, <i>a.</i>	178, 2	201, <i>b</i>	411, 3	Rem.	385, 5	227	205
187, <i>b</i>	177, 3	201, <i>c</i>	453, 1	213	215:216, 1	227, <i>a</i>	202, 3
187, <i>b, N.</i>	177, 4	201, <i>d</i>	453, 2			227, <i>c</i>	204
187, <i>c</i>	177, 2	201, <i>e</i>	455	214, <i>a, 1</i>	217, 1	228	202
187, <i>d</i>	418	202, <i>a</i>	84, 1:	214, <i>a, 2</i>	217, N. 1	228, <i>a</i>	202, 3
			456-7	214, <i>c</i>	217, 2	229	211
188	412, 1 and 2	202, <i>b</i>	84, 2:	214, <i>d</i>	217, N. 2	230	205, N.
			458:	214, <i>e</i>	221	231	212
188, Rem.	412, 3		459	214, <i>f</i>	219	231, <i>b</i>	212, 2
188, <i>a</i>	412, 5	202, <i>c</i>	84, 4 and 5	215 and <i>a</i>	222	232	207
188, <i>b</i>	412, N.	202, <i>d</i>	460, 4	215, <i>b</i>	223	232, <i>N.</i>	207, N. 1
189, <i>b</i>	412, 2	202, <i>e</i>	460	216	225	232, <i>a</i>	207, N. 2
189, <i>c</i>	416	202, <i>f</i>	462	216, <i>a, 1</i>	225, 1	233	206
189, <i>d</i>	414	203	440	216, <i>a, 2</i>	225, 3, 4	233, <i>a</i>	206
190	421	203, <i>a</i>	463	216, <i>a, 3</i>	225, 2	234	214
191	413	203, <i>c</i>	440	216, <i>a,</i>		234, <i>a</i>	214
192	426	204	174, 1	Rem.	225, N. 1	234, <i>b</i>	214, N. 4
193	423	204, <i>b</i>	174, 4	216, <i>a, 4</i>	225, 5		

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
234, <i>c</i>	214, N. 3	243, <i>b</i>	236, 3 and notes	257, <i>a</i>	223	267, <i>b</i>	325
234, <i>d</i>	226, 3	243, <i>c</i>	233	257, <i>b</i>	196: 248	267, <i>c</i>	325, N.
234, <i>d</i> , 1	214, N. 2	243, <i>d</i>	237, 2	258	233: 258, 1 and 4	268	324
234, <i>d</i> , 2	226, 3	243, <i>e</i>	252, 1	258, N. 1	213	269 and N.	319
234, <i>e</i>	258, 2	243, <i>e</i>	252, 1	258, <i>a</i>	233, 2	269, <i>a</i>	322, 4
235	208	243, <i>e</i> , Rem.	252, 2	258, <i>a</i> , N.	1	269, <i>d</i>	320
235, <i>b</i>	210 and N.	243, <i>f</i>	231	258, <i>a</i> , N.	233, 3	270	262
235, <i>e</i>	200, N. 2	244	234: 235	258, <i>a</i> , N.	2	270, N. 2	263
236	209	244, 1	234, 1	258, <i>a</i> , N.	236, 1	270, <i>b</i>	262
237	184: 184, 1 and 2	244, 2	235	258, <i>a</i> , N.	8	271	264
237, N.	184, N. 2	244, <i>a</i>	234, 1	258, <i>b</i>	199, 1 and 2	271, <i>a</i>	269
237, <i>a</i>	184, N. 1	245	254	258, <i>b</i>	199, 1 and 2	271, <i>a</i> , N.	268
237, <i>b</i>	187	245, <i>a</i>	238, 2	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 1	271, <i>b</i>	269, N.
237, <i>c</i>	190, 2	245, <i>b</i>	254, N. 1	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 2	271, <i>c</i>	265
237, <i>d</i>	185, 1 and 2	245, <i>c</i>	218, 1	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 2	272	268
237, <i>e</i>	186	246	247, 2	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 2	272, Rem.	267
238, <i>a-c</i>	190, 1	246, <i>b</i>	247, 3	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 4	272, <i>a</i> , 2	263, N.
239	191	247	239, 1	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 4	273, <i>b</i>	277, 1
239, <i>a</i>	191, 1-3	247, <i>a</i>	239, 1	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 3	273, <i>d</i>	277, 2
239, <i>a</i> , N.	191, 2 and 1 N.	247, <i>c</i>	239, 3	258, <i>b</i> , N.	199, N. 3	273, <i>e</i>	277, 3
239, <i>b</i>	194	248	245	258, <i>c</i> , 1	240, 1	274	275
239, <i>b</i> , N.	2	248, <i>a</i>	244	258, <i>c</i> , 2	242, 1	275	276
239, <i>c</i>	192, 1 and 2	248, <i>a</i> , N.	244	258, <i>d</i>	242, 2	276, <i>a</i>	305, 6
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	248, <i>c</i> , 1	247, 1	258, <i>f</i> , 1	241, 3	276, <i>b</i>	305, 3
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	248, <i>c</i> , 2	250	258, <i>f</i> , 2	241, 2	276, <i>c</i>	305, 7
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	249	253	259, <i>c</i>	501	276, <i>d</i>	305, 4
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	249, <i>a</i>	231	259, <i>d</i>	249	276, <i>e</i>	352
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	250	248	259, <i>e</i>	501	276, <i>e</i> , N.	353
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	250, Rem.	248	259, <i>h</i>	199, N. 4	277 and N.	306, 1
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	251	246	260, <i>b</i>	236, N. 2	277, <i>a</i>	306, 1
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	251, <i>a</i>	246, N.	260, <i>e</i>	258, 3	277, <i>b</i>	306, 4
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	252	251	261, <i>a</i>	258, 2	277, <i>c</i>	306, 2 and 5
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	252, <i>a</i>	224	261, <i>a</i> , N.	258, 2	277, <i>g</i>	307, 3
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	252, <i>d</i>	251	261, <i>b</i>	258, 3	278	310
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	253	238	261, <i>c</i>	258, 2	278, <i>b</i>	311
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	253, <i>a</i>	302, 1	261, <i>d</i>	258	279	307, 1 and 2
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	254	240, 1	262	350, N.	279, <i>c</i>	308, 2
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255	255	263	247, 2	279, <i>d</i>	307, 3
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255, <i>a</i>	255	264	318, 1	279, <i>e</i>	307, N.
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255, <i>d</i>	255	264, <i>b</i>	318, 2 and 3	280	309
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255, <i>d</i> , 1	255, 1	266	321	281	311
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255, <i>d</i> , 2	255, 2	266, Rem.	321	281, Rem.	311
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255, <i>d</i> , 3	255, 4	266, <i>a</i>	172, 5	282	313
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255, <i>d</i> , 4	255, 3	266, <i>b</i>	321, 4	283	314
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	255, <i>d</i> , 5	255, 5	266, <i>c</i>	323	285	315
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	256	197: 243	266, <i>d</i>	376	285, 1-2	304
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	256, <i>a</i>	197	267	325	286	315
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	256, <i>b</i>	243, N.	267, Rem.	325		
239, <i>c</i> , N.	192, 2 and 1 N.	257	196				

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
286, <i>a</i>	314	303, Rem.	302, 1	319, 3	341	331, <i>i</i>	267, N.
286, <i>b</i>	314	304	360	319, 3, N.	338	332	341
287, <i>a</i>	316, 4	304, <i>a</i>	361	319, <i>a</i>	337	332, <i>a</i>	341, 1
287, <i>c</i>	316, 2	305, <i>a</i>	363, 1	319, <i>c, d</i>	341, 3	332, <i>b</i>	339
287, <i>e</i>	316, 1	305, <i>b</i>	363, 1, and 364	320	382: 383	332, <i>c</i>	332
287, <i>f</i>	404, N. 1	305, <i>c</i>	366	320, <i>a</i>	383, 2	332, <i>d</i>	340
287, <i>g</i>	404, N. 2	306	363, 1	320, <i>b</i>	383, 1	332, <i>g</i>	341, 3
287, <i>i</i>	316, 3	306, <i>a</i>	363, 3	320, <i>c</i>	383, 5	332, <i>g, N.</i>	2
288	260	307, 1	363, 1	320, <i>d</i>	382, 1 and 2	332, <i>h</i>	269
288, <i>a</i>	260, 1 and N.	307, 2	364	320, <i>e</i>	382, 1 and 2	333	359
288, <i>d</i>	260, 1 and N.	307, <i>a</i>	363, 1	320, <i>e, N.</i>	382, 2 and N.	333, <i>b</i>	273, 4
288, <i>f</i>	260, 4	307, <i>c</i> ,		320, <i>f</i>	383, 1	334	388
289	278	Rem.	363, 4	321	357	334, <i>a</i>	397, 3
290	279, 1-3	307, <i>d</i>	365	321, Rem.	358	334, <i>e</i>	390, 5
290, <i>b</i>	281, 5	308	366	321, <i>a</i>	392	334, <i>f</i>	390, 2
290, <i>c</i>	280	308, <i>a</i>	367	321, <i>b</i>	382, 2	335	391
290, <i>d</i>	281	308, <i>c</i>	368	321, <i>c</i>	355	336, 1	392
290, <i>d, N.</i>	89, 2	308, <i>d</i>	369	323	342	336, 2	392
291	282	308, <i>e</i>	365	324	343, 1	336, 2, N. 1	144, 2
292	282	310, <i>a</i>	372	324, <i>a</i>	343, 3 and 4	336, <i>a</i>	399, 4
292, <i>a</i>	286	311, <i>a</i>	327	325	347: 348	336, <i>b</i>	392, N. 3
292, <i>c</i>	284	311, <i>b</i>	325, N.	325, <i>a</i>	346, 1 and 2	336, <i>c</i>	392, N. 2
292, <i>d</i>	285, 1	311, <i>c</i>	318, 2	325, <i>b</i>	346, 1 and 2	336, A	260, 1-3
292, <i>e</i>	285, 2	312	375	326	355: 378, 6	336, B	315
293	283	313	378, 1	327	350	336, B, N.	2
293, <i>a</i>	283	313, <i>a, b</i>	378, 2	327, <i>a</i>	349	2	316, 6
293, <i>b</i>	283	313, <i>c</i>	378, 3	328	354	337	402-4
293, <i>c</i>	369	313, <i>d</i>	378, 6	328, <i>a</i>	352	337, <i>a</i>	403
294, <i>a</i>	295, 1	313, <i>e</i>	378, 5	329	333	337, <i>b</i>	404
294, <i>b</i>	295, 1	313, <i>f</i>	378, 5 and N.	330, A	262	338	394: 395
294, <i>c</i>	295, N.	313, <i>g</i>	378, 2	330, B, 1	268	339	393
294, <i>d</i>	295, 2	313, <i>h</i>	382, 1	330, B, 2	273, 2	339, Rem.	393
295	287	313, <i>i</i>	323	330, B, 3	273, 1	340-1	400
295, Rem.	288	314	376	330, <i>b, 1</i>	274, 1	342	405
296	296	314, <i>a</i>	376	330, <i>b, 2</i>	274, 1	343	471
296, Rem.	296	315, <i>a</i>	361: 361, 1 and 2	330, <i>c</i>	268	344	471
297	289 ff.	315, <i>b</i>	361, 2	330, <i>f</i>	272	345	471
298	289, 1 and 2	315, <i>c</i>	465, 4	331	333	346	471
298, <i>a</i>	289, N.	317	328	331, <i>a</i>	273, 2	347, <i>a</i>	16, 2
298, <i>c</i>	289, 3	317, 1	328	331, <i>b</i>	273, 1	347, <i>b</i>	17, 4
299	290	317, 2	382, 3	331, <i>b, N.</i>	273, 1	347, <i>c</i>	17, 4
299, <i>a</i>	290	317, 3	333	331, <i>c</i>	273, 3	347, <i>d</i>	17, 5
299, <i>b</i>	300	317, 3, N.	382, 4, N.	331, <i>e, 2</i>	335	347, <i>d, N. 1</i>	16, 3
300	291	317, <i>b</i>	331	331, <i>f</i>	336	348, 1	18, 1 and Exc.
300, N.	291, N. 1	317, <i>c</i>	332			348, 4	19: 19, 1
301	292	319	337			348, 5	19
302	301	319, 1	337			348, 5, 1-4	19, 2
303	302, 1 and 2					348, 6	19: 19, 3
						348, 7	19: 19, 4

A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.	A. and G.	M.
848, 8	19	856	512	859, <i>f</i>	516	876	498: 506
848, 9	20	858	511	859, <i>g</i>	523	877	527
848, 10	20	858, <i>a</i>	511	860	513	878	527
849	21: 22	858, <i>b</i>	521	862	523	879	528, n. 1
850	21	859, <i>b</i>	524	862, <i>a</i>	523	881	530
851	22	859, <i>c</i>	514	862, <i>b</i>	521	882	527
855, <i>a</i>	510	859, <i>d</i>	514	862, <i>c</i>	524	883	531
855, <i>b</i> ,	510	859, <i>e</i>	515	863	526	884	532
Harkness Mooney		Harkness Mooney		Harkness Mooney		Harkness Mooney	
2	1	86, 5	11, 5	53, 2	37, 1	108, 1-4	50, 2, Exc.
3, II	8	88	24	54	38		4
4	3	89, 1-2	25, 1	55-56	39	109	50, 2
5	5	89, 2, 1)	25, 3	57	42	110, 1-4	50, 2, Exc.
6	6	89, 2, 2)	25, 2	58	42		5
7	7	41	26	59	43	111	50, 3
8	14	42, I	27, 1: 28.	60	44: 45	112-115	50, 3, Exc.
16, I, 1	17, 4		1	61	46	116	53
16, I, 2	17, 5	42, II	27, 1: 28.	62	47	117	54, 1
16, II	17, 2		2	62, II	49, 1, 4	118	54, 3
16, III	17, 3	42, II, n.	28, 3	62, III	49, 2-4	119, 1	54, 2
16, III, n.		43, 1	26	62, IV	49, 4	119, 3	54, 4
1	16, 1	43, 2	27, 2	62, IV, n.		120, and	
16, III, n.		44	29, 1	1	49, n.	1-2	55
2	16, 4	45	29, 2	63	47	121, 1	55, 4
17	15, 1	45, 1-2	29, n.	64	47	122, and 1	55, 2
18	15, 2	46	30	64, 2	49, 6	123	55, 1
18, 1, 2)	15, 4	46, 2	32	66	47: 48	124	26: 28
18, 2, 1)	15, 3	47	31	67	39	130, 1-3	56, 1
22	9	48	33	68	52	131	56, 2 and
23, 1-2	10, 1	48, 4	29, 2	68, 3	52, 4		3
24-25	9	49, 1-2	33, n. 1	68, 4	52, 7	132	57
27	10, 2 and	49, 3	33, n. 3	69-98	51	133, 1	61, 4
	3	49, 4	33, n. 2	99	50, 1	133, 2	61, 7
28-29	2	50	34	100, 1-3	50, 1, Exc.	133, 3	61, 4
30	11, 7	51	35		1	133, 5	61, 5
31	11, 8	51, 2, 4)	35, n. 2	101, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	134	60: 61, 1
33, 1	11, 1 and	51, 4, 1)-			2		and 2
	2	3)	35, n. 3	102, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	136, 1-2	58, 1
33, 2	12, 6	51, 5	36, 2 and		3	137, 1	58, 3
33, 3	12, 3		3	103, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	137, 2	58, 6
33, 4	11, 6	51, 6	36, 4		4	138	58, 2
34, 1	11, 4	51, 7 and		104, 1-2	50, 1, Exc.	141-143	59
34, 2	12, 2, 5,	n.	37, 1		5	146-147	62
	and 7	51, 8	29, 2	105	50, 2	148	63, 3
34, 3	12, 8	52, 1	35, n. 1	106, 1-2	50, 2, Exc.	149	63, 4
35, 3, 2)	11, 4	52, 3	36, 6		1	150	63, 5
36, 2	11, 4	53	35	107, 1-3	50, 2, Exc.	151	64, 1, 2,
36, 3, 2)	106, 2	53, 1	37, 2		2		and 5

II.	M.	II.	M.	II.	M.	II.	M.
151, N. 2	86, 2	186, I	80	212	96	262, N. 1	114, 20-33
152, I-III	65	186, II-		213	95	262, N. 2	115
153	65, 1	III	80	214	96	263	114
154	65, 2 and 6	186, IV	80	215	95	264	112
155-156	65, 3	186, V	81	216	96	265	112
157	65, 5	186, VI	80	217	99	266	111
158	65, 4	186, 1	80, N.	218	99	267, 1	110
158, 1	66, Exc. 4	186, 4	85	219	99	267, 2-3	111
158, 2	66	187	82	222, I	90, 1	268, 1	135
158, 2, 2)	66, Exc. 2	187, 1	82, 1	222, II	90, 2	268, 2	135, 1 and 2
159, 1	66, Exc. 5	187, 3	82, 2-3	222, III	90, 3	268, 3	89, 1
160	67	187, 4	85	223-230	94	269	113
162	68 : 69	188, and		231-232	97	270	118
163, 1	69, 1	I	83	233	98, 1	271, 1	116
163, 1, N.	69, 2	188, II, 1	83	234	98, 2	271, 2	117
163, 2	69, 3	188, II, 2	83, 1	235	100, 1	272, 1	116
163, 3	71, 1	188, II, 4	85	235, 3	101, 4	272, 2	117
164	69, 4 and N.	189	84	236	100, 3	272, 3	121
165	69, 6	190, 1	84, 1	237	100, 4	272, 3, N. 2	127
165, N. 1	65, 7	190, 2,		238	100, 6	273	120
165, N. 2	69, 5	1)-2)	84, 2-7	239	101, 6	274	120
166	71, 1	191	85	240, 1	101, 2	275	113
167	71, 2	191, N.	390, 5	240, 3	101, 1	276-278	119
168	71, 3	193, I-II	87, 2	240, 4	101, 3	279	121
169, 1	70, 3	195, I-II	87, 1	240, 6	101, 5	280	147
169, 2	70, 1	195, II, 1	205, N.	247	91	281	147, 1
169, 3	70, 2	195, II, 2	89	249	90	282	147, 2
169, 4	70, 3	196, I-III	88, 1	250	102, 1	283	136
170	70, 3	197, I-II	88, 2	251	103	284	131
170, 2	423	197, II,		251, 2	103, 3	285	132
171-172	72	N. 1	307	251, 3	103, 1	286	130
174	72	197, N. 2	88, 2	251, 4	103, 2	287	130
175	73	198, I-II	304	251, 5	102, 2	288	137
175, N. 1	74, 1	199	88, 3	251, 6	103, 4	288, 2	137, 1-5
176-177	73	200	88, 1	252	104, 3	289	138
178	74, 2	200, I	261	253	104, 3 and N.	290, I	93
179	73	200, II	287 : 288	254	104, 2	290, II-	
180	72	200, III	301 : 302	255, I, 1-2	104, 4	III	138
180, 3	72, N. 1	200, IV	278	255, I, 3	104, N. 1	291	139
181	72	201	92, 1	255, I, 4	104, N. 2	292	140
182	75	202	92, 3	255, II	104, 1	293	141
183	76	202, N. 1-		256	105	294	143
184	77	N. 2	90	256, 1	106, 3	295	142
184, 2	79	204	93	257	109, 1	296	142, N. 3
184, 3	77, 2	205	95	258	109	297, I	144, 6
184, 4	79	206	96	259, 1	107	297, II, 1	144, 1
184, 6	77, 4	207	95	259, 2	108	297, II, 2	144, 2
185	78	208	96	260	134	297, II, 3	144, 4
185, N. 1	78, N. 2	209	95	261	113	297, III, 1	144, 5
185, N. 2	78, N. 3	210	96	262	114	298	145
		211	95				

H.	M.	H.	M.	II.	M.	H.	M.
299	145, 1	333	162, 1-4	374	192	390	206
300	145, 2	333, 1	162, 1	374, 1	193	391, I	214
301	145, 3	333, 2	162, 2	374, 2	192, 1 and 2	391, II, 1	214, 3
304	148	333, 3	162, 3	374, n. 1-	192, 1 and 2	391, II, 2	258, 2
304, I, 2	150, 1	333, 4	162, 4	374, n. 1-	192, 1 and 2	391, II, 4	214, 2:
304, I, 3,		334	166, 1 and 2	374, n. 4	192, 2 and n.		226, 3
1)	149, 1	335	158			393-5	215
304, II, 1	149, 3	336	157, 1	376	194	396, I	217, 1
304, II, 2	149, 2 and 3	337	157, 2	377	188	396, II	216, 1
304, IV	148, 2	338	157, 3	378, and 1	198	396, II, n.	216, 3
305	151	339	157, 4	378, and 2	195	396, III,	216, 1
306	152, 1	340	156	379	196: 197	n. 1	216, 2
306, 2	152, 2	341	169	379, 1	197, n.:	396, III,	
306, 3	152, 3	342	170		243, n.	n. 2	216, 4
306, 4	152, 2-5	344	168	379, 2	233, 3	396, IV	225
307, n. 1	153, 1	344, 1-5	12	380	199	396, V	222: 224
308	153, 2	344, 6	153, 2	380, II	199, 1	396, V, n.	222
309	154	351, 1	384	380, II, 1	199, n. 1	396, VI	219
309, 1	464, 1	351, 1, n.		380, II, 2,		397	225
309, 2	464, 2	1	385, 1	1)	199, 2	397, 1	225, 1
310, 1	465, 1	351, 1, n.		380, II, 2)	199, 1	397, 2	225, 4
310, 2	465, 3	2	385, 3	380, II, 3	199, n. 3	397, 3	225, 2 and 3
310, 3	465, 5	351, 1, n.		380, II, 4	213		
310, 4	465, 8	3	385, 4	381	200	397, 3, n.	
310, 5	465, 7	352	386	381, n. 3,		2	225, n. 4
311, 1	470, 6	353	385, 5	1)	200, n. 1	397, 3, n.	
311, 3	470, 4	353, n. 3	385, n.	381, n. 3,		3	225, n. 2
311, 4	470, 5	358	171	2)	200, n. 3	397, 4	225, 5
311, 5	470, 2	360	173, 1	381, n. 3,		398, 3	433, 2
311, 6	470, 3	360, n. 2	173, 2	3)	200, n. 2	398, 4	218, 2
311, 7	470, 1	362	174, 3	382	201	398, 5	258, 2
312	155	362, 2, 2)	173, 3	384, I-II	205	399, I	226, 1
313	156	363	179	384, II, 1,		399, II	226, 2
314	156	363, 1	179	2)	208	400	214
321	159, 1	363, 4, 1)	433, 2	384, II, 1,		401	217, 2
322	159, 4	363, 4, 2)	242, 3	3)	206	401, n. 2	217, n. 2
323	159, 2	363, 5	180, 2	384, II, 2	203	401, n. 3	217, n. 1
324, 2-3	159, 3	364	180, 1	384, II, 5	205, n.	402-3	217, 2
324, 5	159, 5	367	232	385, I-II	205	404-5	224
325	160	368	256	385, II, 1	204	406, I	229
326	161, 1 and 4	369	257	386	202	406, II	227, 1
		370	183	387	212	406, III	230
327	161, 1-5	371	184	387, n. 1-		406, III,	
328	163, 3	371, I, 1	184, 1	2	212, n. 2	n.	227, 5
329	163, 1 and 2	371, I, 2	184, 2	388	207	407	227, 2-4
		371, II	190, 1	388, n.	207, n. 1	408, I, 1	230, 1
380	163, 2 and 6	371, III	190, 2	388, 1	207, n. 2	408, I, 2	230, 2
		372	185, 1 and 2	388, 1, n.	284	408, II	230, 4
381	164, 1-6			388, 2	247, 2	408, III	230, 3
382	165	373	191	389	209	408, IV	230, 4

H.	M.	H.	M.	II.	M.	H.	M.
409, I	227, 4	429	243	447	433, 1	467, III, 2	305, 6
409, II	228	429, 1	243, 2	448	434	467, III, 4	352
409, III	229	430	249	448, N.	439	467, III, 5	305, 7
410, I, 1	227, 6	430, N. 3	249, Rem.	449	437	467, III, 6	305, 8
410, I, 2	227, 4		2	449, 1	437	468	306, 1
410, II, 3	228, N.	431	255	449, 2	435, N.	469, I	306, 1
410, III	228	432	258	449, 5	438	469, II	306, 3
410, IV, N.		433	258, 1	450	441	469, II, 1	306, 2
2	229, N. 1	434	258, 3	450, 1	442, 1	469, II, 2	306, 4
410, V	231	435	258, 4	450, 2	442, 1	470	310
411	232	436	258	450, 3	442, 2	471, I	307, 1
412, I	233, 1	437	258, 2	450, 4	443, 1	471, II	307, 2
412, II, 1	233, 2	438	174, 2:	451	445, 1	471, II, 1,	
412, II, 2	233, N. 2		178	451, 2	445, 5	1)	308, 1
412, II, 3	233, 3	438, 4	416	451, 3	446, 1	471, II, 3	307, N.
413	234:236:	438, 5	412, 4	452	447	471, II, 4	343, 1-3
	254	438, 6	174, 6	453	455	471, II, 5	308, 2
414, I-III	236: 237	439, 1	178, 2	454	83	471, II, 6	306, 1
414, IV	252	439, 2	177, 3	454, 2	387, 1	472	309
415	234	439, N.	177, 4	454, 3	390, 6	472, 1	313
415, I	247, 2	439, 3	177, 2	455	84, 1-3	472, 2	343, 3
415, II	234, 1	439, 4	415	455, 1	84, 1 and 2	473	311
415, III	235	440, N.	425	455, 2	390, 5	474	318, 1
416, 1, 1)	254	440, 2	491	456	457, 1	475, I	318, 1
416, 1, 2)	254, N. 1	440, N. 1-		457	458: 459	475, II, 1	380
417	239, 1	2	423	457, 1	462	475, II, 2	363: 368:
417, 1	239, 1	440, N. 4	412, N.	458	84, 5 and 7		369
417, N. 1	239, 2	441	412	458, 1-2	460	475, II, 3	378, 4 and
417, N. 2	239, 3	441, 1	412, 1 and	459	440	5	
417, 2	248		2	459, 4	461	475, II, 4	356: 357
418	247, 1	441, 2	412, 2-5	460	174, 1	475, II, 5	342
419, I	244	442	424	460, 1	174, 2	476, 1	369
419, II	246	443	413	460, N. 2	172	476, 3	321
419, III	245	444	426	461	174, 6	476, 4	318, 2
420	247, 1	444, 1	426	461, 1-2	174, 6	476, 5	318, 3
421, I	253	444, 2	429	461, 4	174, 5	477, I	321: 325
421, II	250	444, 3	428	462	181, N. 2	477, II	327
421, III	238, 2	445	182, 1 and	463, II	175, 1	480	325: 327
422	251		5	463, II, 1	176	482	325
423	248	445, 3	182, 3	463, II, 3	175, 2	483	321: 325
423, N. 2	249	445, N. 1	182, 3	463, II, 4	175, 4	483, 1-3	325
424	238, 1	445, 4	182, 4	464	184, N. 1	483, 6	376
425, I	240, 1	445, 6	451: 452	465	188	484, I	325
425, II	242, 1	445, 7	182, 2:	465, 1	205, N.	484, II	321
425, II, 1, 240, 2:			445, 4	465, 2	89	484, III	323
1)	241, 1	445, 8	450: 454,	465, N. 2	89, 1	484, IV	321
425, II, 2	241, 3		1	466	305, 1	484, V	324
425, II, N.		445, 9	454, 2	467, I	305, 1	485	327
2	241, 2	446	432, 1	467, II	305, 5	485, N. 3	327, N.
426, 1	242, 1	446, N. 2	432, 2	467, III	305, 4	486	327
426, 2	242, 2	446, N. 3	216, 5	467, III, 1	305, 4	487	319

H.	M.	H.	M.	II.	M.	H.	M.
487, 1-2	320	507, III	366	526	399, 1 and 2	541	287
488	319	507, III, 1	371: 372			542, I	289
489	321, 4	508	363	527, I	402	542, II	290
490-1	315	508, 1	361	527, II	403	542, III	291
492	314	508, 3	361, 1 and 2	527, III	404	542, IV	292
498	314			528	392-4	543	295, 1
495, I	316, 4	509	364	529, I	388	543, N.-	
495, II	316, 1	509, N. 3	403	529, II	405	544, 1	296
495, IV	316, 6	510	366-9	529, II, N.		544, 1, N.	298
495, VI	316, 2	510, N. 1	366	1, 1)	405	544, 2	297
496, I	317, 1	510, N. 2	367	529, II, 1	390	544, N. 1	297
496, II	317, 2	511	365	529, II, 1,		544, N. 3	300
496, II, N.		511, 1, N.		N. 1	390, 2	545	259
2	317, 8	3	368	529, II, 1,		546	301
497	328	511, 2	369	N. 3	390, 1	547	302, 1
497, I	328, 3	512	370	529, II, 3, 1)-2)	390,	547, N. 1	302, 1
497, II	328	513, I	376	3 and 4		547, N. 2	302, 2
497, II, 1	328	513, II	375	529, II, 8,		548	278
497, II, 1,		515, I	378, 5	N. 2	390, 4	549, 1-3	282
N.	330	515, II	378, 4	529, II, 5	389	549, 5	281, 4
497, II, 2	331: 335	515, III	378, 2 and 6: 382,	530	391: 392:	549, N. 2	286
498, I	333	1			395	550	279
498, II	334	515, III,		530, N. 4	399, 4	550, N. 3	284
498, III,	336	N. 2	378, 5, N.	531	401	550, N. 4	281
499, 1	329	515, III,		532	261	550, N. 5	280
499, 2	273, 1	N. 3	378, 2	533	261	552, 2	467
499, 3	333	516, I	357	533, I, 1-		552, 3	361, N.
500	337	516, II	357	2	264	554	464, 1
500, I-II	382, 4	516, II, 2	358	533, II	277, 1-3	554, I	465, 1
501, I, 1	341, 2	517	355: 382,	534	266	554, II	465, 3
501, I, 2	341, 1	2		534, 1	274	554, III	465, 5
501, II, 1	341, 1	518	343	535, I, 1-		554, IV	465, 8
501, II, 2	341, 3	518, N. 1	343, 1	3	268	554, V	465, 7
502, 1	267, N.	518, N. 2	343, 3	535, I, 4	285, 2	555	464, 2
502, 2	339	519, I	349	535, II	273, 1-3	555, I	470, 6
502, 3	340	519, II	354	535, III	273, 4	555, III	470, 4
503, I	383, 2	520, I, 1	350	536	266	555, IV	470, 5
503, I, N.		520, I, 2	351	536, 1	276	555, V	470, 2
1	383, 5	520, II	351, 1	536, 2	265	555, VI	470, 3
503, II,		521	344-8	537	260, 1-3	555, VII	470, 1
1-2	383, 1	522	391	537, 1	260, 1 and N.	556-7	155
503, II, 3	383, 3	523, I	392	537, 3	260, 4	559-61	471
504	341, 3	523, II	394	537, N. 2	260, 4 and N.	562	473
504, 1-4	335: 341,	523, II, 2	395			565-73	471
3		523, III	393	538	262: 267	575	17, 1
505, I, 1-3	341, 3	524	392	539, III	275	576, I	17, 4
505, I, 4	341, N.	524, 1	392, N. 2	540, I	388	576, II	17, 5
505, II, 1	341, 3	524, 2	392, N. 3	540, II	267: 268	577	17, 2
506	360	525	396-8	540, III	333: 341	578	17, 3
507, I	363	525, 2	398, 4	540, IV	359	579	18
507, II	364					579, I, 1	18, 1, Exc.

H.	M.	II.	M.	II.	M.	II.	M.
579, I, 2	18, 2	585, III	21, Exc. 3	608, VI	517	636, V, 2	490
579, I, 3	18, 2, Exc.	585, IV	21, Exc. 4	610	523	636, V, 3	492
580, I	19	585, V	21, Exc. 5	610, 3	523	637, V	475
580, II-		586	22, 1	611 and 1	521	637, VII	476
III	20	586, I-II	22, 1 and 2	611, 2	522	637, VIII	474
581, I	19, 3	596	509	611, 4	521	637, XI, 1	495
581, II	19, 4	596, 1	510	614-5	526	637, XI, 3	477
581, III	19, 1	597	512	635, 2	479	637, XI, 5	496
581, IV	19, 2	598	510	655, 3	480	637, XI, 6	494
581, VI	20, 1	599	511	636, I	485	641-5	498-506
581, VII	20, 3	600	511	636, I, 1	483	646	527 : 529
581, VIII	20, 2	602	521 : 522	636, II, 1	486	647	528
581, IX	20, 4	607	524	636, III	487	648	530 : 531
582	21	608, I	514	636, III, 1	484	649	507 : 508
583	22, 1	608, II	515	636, III, 2	488	650	532
585	21	608, III	519	636, III, 3	472	651, I	16, 4
585, I	21, Exc. 1	608, IV	522	636, IV, 2	497	651, II	17, 4
585, II	21, Exc. 2	608, V	516	636, IV, 3	491	651, VII	16, 2

INDEX

The references are to sections

A

a, 2; quan. of final, 19. 1; quan. in increm. of nouns, 21; quan. in increm. of verbs, 22.

ā, sound, 5; characteristic of 1st dec., 31; stem-vowel of 1st conj., 92. 1; *ā*-stems, 33.

ǣ, sound, 5; in nom. pl. neut. 3d dec., 39; gen. of nouns in, 50. 3; ending of acc. sing., 52. 2; changed, 9.

ā- (*ab-*, *abs-*, *as-*, *au-*), 12. 1.

ā, prep., use, 258. 3; with abl. of agt., 247. 2; with abl. of separation, 236. notes; with abl. of place from which, 233.

Abbreviations, 532.

Ablative case, 29. 2.

in *-ābus*, 33. note 2; in *-ī* in 3d dec., 49. 4; in *-is* for *-ibus*, 52. 8; in *-ubus*, 4th dec., 54. 1; of adjs. 3d dec., 66; of Greek nouns, 3d dec., 52. 5; in *-ō*, *-ā*, *-e*, *-is*, as advbs., 149. 2 and 3.

Syntax, 232-255.

absolute, 255.

agent, 247. 2.

accompaniment, 244.

attendant circumstance, 255. 6. cause, 254; with *prae*, 254. note 2.

comparison, 239.

manner, 245.

material, 235.

means, 247. 1.

measure, 248.

place from which, 233.

place where, 240, 241.

price, 251.

Ablative, Syntax:

quality, 246.

separation, 236, 237.

source, 234.

specification, 238.

time before or after, 249.

time how long, 249. 2.

time when, 243.

time within which, 243.

with *opus est*, 252.

with verbs of filling, 250.

with verbs, 253.

with prepositions, 258.

in apposition with locative, 242. 3.

denoting selection, 225. 5, note 2.

Abstract nouns, 25. 2.

endings, 160, 161. 4.

for concrete, 407.

pl. for sing., 408.

sing. only, 56. 1.

Abundant verbs, 146.

-ābus, 33. note 2.

āc, 465. 1.

āc sī, with subj., 375.

Accent, rules of, 15.

gen. of prop. names in *-ius*, 36. 1.

accipiter, 49. 6.

Accusative, 29. 2.

as adv., 149. 1.

in *-im*, 49. 1-3.

Syntax, 183-200.

adverbial, 195.

cognate, 190.

direct obj., 184-194.

exclamations, 200.

extent in space, 196; in time, 197.

general uses, 183.

instead of dat., 214. note 3.

Accusative, Syntax:

- instead of obj. gen., 216. 2.
- limit of motion, 199.
- person and thing, 192-194.
- result produced, 189-194.
- retained, 193; with compounds, 194.
- specification, 198.
- two accs., obj. and pred., 189-191.
- with compounds, 185. 2.
- with impersonals, 186.
- with passives, 188.
- with prepositions, 258.
- with verbs of affections or emotions, 187.
- with verbs of asking, begging, etc., 192. 2.
- with verbs of considering, 191. 3.
- with verbs of holding, giving, taking, 191. 4.
- with verbs of making, appointing, choosing, 191. 2.
- with verbs of naming, 191. 1.
- with verbs of teaching and hiding, 192. 1.
- with verbs meaning to understand, distinguish, inscribe, 191. 6.

acer, 65. 1.

Active Voice, 87. 1; conjug., 88.

acus, gen., 54. 3.

ad- (*ac-*, *ag-*, *a-*, *al-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*), 12. 2.

ad, prep. with acc., 258. 1; with acc. of town, 199. 2, note 1.

-adēs, 159. 4.

Adjectives, 62 ff.

- comparison, 67 ff.
- comparative, formation, 68.
- change of stem, 69. 6.
- defective, 71.
- of adjs. in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, 69. 4.
- of adjs. in *-er*, 69. 1.
- superlative, formation, 69.
- superlative, in *-limus*, 69. 3.
- without terminal comparison, 70.
- composition, 170.

Adjectives:

- connective expressed, 425.
- 1st and 2d decs., 63 ff.; endings, 63. 2; irregular, 64; with *-e* in abl., 49. 4, note.
- 3d dec., 65 ff.; comparatives, 66; neuter wanting, 66. exc. 4; pres. act. part., 65. 5.
- derivation, 162-166; from names of countries, 164. 6.
- numerals, 72.
- possessives, 78.
- quantity, 23. 1 and 2.

Syntax:

- agreement of attributive, 178, 415.
- agreement of predicate, 171, 174, 175, 177, 414, 416, 417.
- agreeing with sense, 418.
- as nouns, 412.
- comparative, 426 and 429.
- comparative equivalents for, 419.
- comparative intensified, 428.
- denoting race, 422.
- equal to gen., 421.
- equal to rel. clause, 424.
- equal to prepositional phrase, 411.
- superlative, 427.
- superlative intensified, 428.
- with proper name, 420.
- with translation of adverbs, 413.

admoneō, constr., 227. 4.

Admonishing, verbs of, constr. with, 333.

adolēscō, 89. 2.

ador, gen., 50. 1, exc. 2.

adulter, 35. 3.

Adverbs, 24, 148-152.

- comparison, 152.
- formation by case-forms, 149.
- formation by composition, 150.
- formation by endings, 148.
- formation from pronouns, 151.
- in letters, 313.
- numeral, 72.
- position, 471.
- with part. gen., 225. 5.

- adversarius*, 412. 5.
 Adversative conjunctions, 465. 5.
 clauses, 377-379.
adversus, constr., 214. note 3.
adversum, 258. 1.
 Advising, verbs of, constr. with, 333.
ae, 3.
 sound, 6.
 changed, 9. 1.
aedēs, 57.
aedilis, 49. 4, note.
Aenēas, 34.
aequor, 44; *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 2.
-aeus, 164. 4, note.
 Agent, 207, 247. 2.
ager, dec., 35.
-āi, *gend.*, 1st dec., 33. note 1.
aiō, 144. 1.
alacer, 71. 3.
alicubi, 151.
alicunde, 151.
aliquis, 84. 2, 456.
aliter, 148. 2, note.
alius, 64. 5; reciprocal use, 440.
Allia, 28. note.
alvus, *gend.*, 37. 2.
amb- (*am-*), inseparable prep., 153. 2.
aliquā, 151.
aliquandō, 151.
aliquantus, 85.
aliquis, 84. 2.
aliquō, 151.
aliquot, 85.
aliquotiēns, 151.
-ālis, 163. 2.
 Alliteration, 495.
 Alphabet, 1.
alter, 64. 4; reciprocal use, 440.
alter uter, 86. 2.
altior, 65. 6.
ambāgēs, 49. 6.
ambō, 73, 461.
amicus, as a noun, 412. 5.
amnis, 49. 4.
amō, conjugation, 95.
amussis, 49. 1.
an, 385. 5, 390. 4.
an nōn, 385. note, 390. 3.
 Anacoluthon, 489.
 Anapaest, 512.
 Anaphora, 472.
 Ancient verb forms, 101.
angustiae, 56. 3.
animal, 47.
-āns, participial adjs. in, 66. exc. 3.
 Answers to questions, 386.
ante, 258. 1.
 in dates, 501. 4.
 in expressions of time, 249.
 Antecedent of rel., 449-454.
 attracted into case of rel., 454. 2.
 attracted into rel. clause, 453.
 implied in a possessive, 451.
 omitted, 452.
 repeated in rel. clause, 450.
 Antepenult, 15. 2.
antequam, 470. 6; with *ind.*, 350; with
 subj., 351.
-ānus, 163. 5, 164. 1 and 4.
 Aorist, 307. 2.
 Apocope, 480.
 Apodosis, 360.
 Aposiopesis, 477.
 Apposition, 179-181.
 acc. with cl., 180. 2.
 partitive, 180. 1.
 position, 471.
 predicate, 181.
 with locative, 242. 2.
aptus, constr., 214. note 4.
apud, 258. 1.
aqua, 57.
aquā et igni interdicere, 49. 4.
-ar, nom. in, *gend.*, 50. 3.
arbor, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 2.
-āris, 163. 2.
-ārium, 159. 2.
-ārius, 163. 2.
arma, 56. 3.
Arsis, 511.
artus, 54. 1.
-ās, final, 20.
 gend. ending, 33. note 1.
 in 1st dec., 34; *adj.* ending, 164. 4.
 in 3d dec., *gend.*, 50. 2.
ās, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 1, 527.
-ās in acc. pl., 52. 9.
 Asking, verbs of, constr. with, 333.
asper, 63. 5.
aspergere, constr. with, 203.

Aspirates, 8.
 Asseverations, 326.
 -*assim* = -*āverim*, 101. 3.
 Assimilation of Consonants, 11. 1.
 -*assō* = -*āverō*, 101. 3.
 Asyndeton, 483.
at, 465. 5.
 -*ātim*, 148. 3.
atque, 465. 1.
atquē, 465. 5.
 Attributive, see Adjectives.
 -*ātus*, 159. 5, 163. 4.
au, 3; sound, 6; changed, 9. 1.
audeō, 89. 1.
audiō, 95; with pres. part., 285. 2.
audītū, 302. 2.
 -*aus*, nouns in, gen., 50. 2.
aut, 465. 3, 385. 5.
aut . . . aut, 465. 4.
autem, 465. 5.
auxilium, 57.
avē, 144. 5.
avis, 49. 4.
 -*āx*, 162. 4.
axis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.

B

b changed to *p*, 11. 2.
balneum, 57, 58. 1, 59.
belli, 242. 2.
bellum, 35.
bene, 19. 2; compared, 152. 2.
bigae, 56. 3.
biugum, 16. 3.
 -*bilis*, 162. 3.
bipennis, 49. 3.
bonus, 63. 3; compared, 69. 6.
bonum, 57.
bōs, 18. 2, exc.; dec., 47.
brācae, 56. 3.
 Bringing about, verbs of, constr. with,
 334.
bs, sound, 7.
bt, sound, 7.
 Bucolic Diaeresis, 522.
 -*bulum*, 161. 5.
 -*bundus*, 162. 1.
būris, 49. 1.

C

c, sound, 7.
 nom. in, gen., 50. 3.
cadāver, gen., 50. 1, exc. 4.
 Caesura, 521.
 Calendar, Roman, 498 ff.
calix, gen., 50. 2, exc. 3.
canālis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
canis, 49. 6.
 Capacity, table of, 531.
 Capitals, use of, 13.
carbasus, gen., 37. 2, 59.
 Cardinals, 72.
carcer, 57.
cardō, gen., 50. 1, exc. 1.
carō, dec., 48; gen., 50. 1, exc. 1.
 Caring for, verbs of, constr. with,
 334.
 Case, 29. 2.
 endings, 1st dec., 31; 2d dec., 35;
 3d dec., 39; 4th dec., 53; 5th
 dec., 55.
 Cases alike, 32.
cassēs, 56. 3.
castrum, 57.
caulis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
causā, with gen., 218. 1.
 Causal clauses, 355-358.
 position of, 471.
 replaced by Abl. Abs., 255.
 Causal Conjunctions, 465. 7, 470. 1.
cavēre, constr. with, 204.
cavē nē, with subj., 321. 4.
 -*ce*, 15. 4, 18. exc., 80. note.
cedo, 144. 5.
cēlāre, 192. 1, and note.
cēnō, 89. 2.
cēnseō, constr. with, 270.
cernō, with part., 271.
cēteri, 463.
cēterum, 465. 5.
ch, sound, 7.
 Characteristic clauses, 383.
 Chiasmus, 473.
circum }, 258. 1.
circū },
circiter, 258. 1.
circumdare, constr. with, 203.
cis, 258. 1.
citerior, 71. 1.

- civis*, 49. 4.
clāvis, 49. 3.
coepti, 144. 6, and note.
cōgnitū, 302. 2.
cōgnōmen, 507.
collis, *gend.*, 50. 2, *exc.* 2.
colōnia, *use*, 199. 2, *note* 2.
Collective nouns, 25. 3.
colus, 37. 2.
com- (*con-*, *col-*, *cor-*, *co-*), 12. 3.
comitium, 57.
Command expressed by imp., 319; *by subj.*, 321.
Commanding, verbs of, 333.
Common nouns, 25. 2.
commoneō, *constr.*, 227. 4.
commonefaciō, *constr.*, 227. 4.
Comparison of adjs., 67 ff.
of advs., 152.
Compelling, verbs of, 341. 2.
compēs, *gend.*, 50. 1, *exc.* 5.
Complementary Final Clauses, 333.
Infinitive, 261.
Result Clauses, 341.
complēre, 231.
compos, 65. 4.
Composition, 167 ff.
of adjectives, 170.
of nouns, 169.
of verbs, 168.
Conative pres., 305. 3; *impf.*, 306. 2.
Concessive Clauses, 377-379.
Concession exp. by Subj., 323; *by fut.*, 379.
concessū, 61. 1.
Concrete nouns, 25. 2.
for Abstracts, 406.
Condemning, verbs of, 228.
Conditional sentences, 360-376.
classes, 362.
exp. in a word or phrase, 372.
Ideal, 364; *in indir. disc.*, 403.
Incomplete, 371.
Logical, 363; *in indir. disc.*, 402.
Mixed, 370.
Unreal, 366-369; *in indir. disc.*, 404.
Conditional Clauses of comparison, 375.
Conditional particles, 361, 373.
- Conjugation*, 88.
distinguished, 92. 1.
periphrastic, 98.
regular, 95.
synopsis, 94.
Conjunctions, classified, 154.
syntax, 464 ff.
coördinating, 464, 469.
subordinating, 464, 470.
position, 471.
Consonants, 4.
classification, 8.
final, omitted, 11. 5.
pronunciation, 7.
Consonant changes, 11 ff.
-stems, 39, 40; *with nom. in -is*, 47. 1.
cōnsuēvi, 307. 1, *note*.
cōnsul, 44.
cōnsulere, *constr. with*, 204.
contrā, 258. 1.
Contraction of vowels, 10. 1.
Coördinate conjunctions, 464.
cōpia, 57.
Copula, 173. 1 and 3.
Copulative conjunctions, 465. 1.
cor, *gend.*, 50. 1, *exc.* 2.
cōram, 258. 3.
cornū, 53.
corpus, 46.
Correlative conjunctions, 465. 2 and 4.
expressions, 466.
pronouns, 85.
cōs, *gend.*, 50. 1, *exc.* 3.
Countries, names of, *gend.*, 28. 2.
crātis, 49. 3.
-crum, 161. 3.
cucumis, *gend.*, 50. 2, *exc.* 2.
cui, 19. 3.
-culum, 161. 5.
-culus, *-a*, *-um*, 159. 1, 165.
cum, *prep.*, 258. 3.
enclitic, 77. 4, 258. 3, *note*.
conjunction, 470. 1 and 5.
causal, 355.
concessive, 378. 6.
temporal, 344 ff.
temporal, with ind., 345, 346.
temporal, with subj., 347, 348.
cum primum, 470. 6.

cum . . . tum, 465. 2.

-cundus, 162. 1.

cupiō, with inf. and acc., 273. 1.

cūr, 18. 2, exc.

-cus, dissyllables in, 54. 1.

cutis, 49. 3.

D

Dactyl, 512.

Dactylic hexameter, 523 ff.

verse, 513.

pentameter, 526.

dapis, 61. 4.

Dates, 498 ff.

in letters, 502.

Roman into English, 503-505.

Dative, 29. 2.

and abl. in *-ābus*, 33. note 2.

like abl. in pl., 32.

in *-is* for *-ibus*, 52. 8.

in *-ubus*, 4th dec., 54. 1.

of irregular adjs., 64. 4, 5.

5th dec., 55. 3, 4.

Syntax of, 201-214.

agent, 207, 207. 2.

ethical, 209.

object, 201-205.

place, 213.

point of view, 210.

possession, 212.

purpose, 206.

reference, 208, 211.

separation, 211.

with adjs., 214.

with comp. verbs, 202.

with intr. verbs, 205.

with *licet*, 263. note.

with verbs, *aspergere*, *circumdare*, and *dōnāre*, 203.

with other verbs, 204.

dē, 258. 3.

dea, 33. note 2.

dēbuit, with pres. inf., 260. 1. note.

Declarative sentences in indir. disc., 392.

Declensions, 31 ff.

1st dec., 33 ff.

2d dec., 35 ff.

3d dec., 39 ff.

Declensions:

4th dec., 53 ff.

5th dec., 55 ff.

Defective adjectives, comparison, 71.

Defective nouns, 56 ff.

Defective verbs, 144.

passive supplied, 431.

Delaying, verbs of, constr. with, 341. 3.

Deliberative subjunctive, 324.

dēliciae, 56. 3.

dēlicium, 58. 1, 59.

Dēlos, 38.

Demanding, verbs of, constr. with, 333.

Demonstrative adverbs, 151.

pronouns, 80.

Syntax, 182, 441-447.

dēns, gend., 50. 2, exc. 5.

Dentals, 8.

Dental stems, 42.

Dependent clauses, 328 ff.

tenses of subj. in, 314-317.

depending on a dep. clause, 316. 3.

depending on an inf., 316. 5.

Deponent verbs, 89, 97.

Derivation, of words, 156-166.

adjectives, 162-166.

nouns, 159-161.

verbs, 157, 158.

Desideratives, 157. 3.

dēsīnere, 100. 2.

deus, 36. 4.

dēterior, 71. 1.

dēterius, 152. 3.

dexter, 63. 5.

Diaeresis, 522.

Diastole, 516.

dīc, 18. 2, exc., 100. 6.

dictū, 302. 2.

-dicus, 69. 4.

Didō, 52. 3.

dīēs, 55.

difficilis, comp., 69. 3; with supine, 302. 1.

Diminutive verbs, 157. 4.

nouns, 159. 1.

Diphthongs, 3; sound of, 6.

stems in, 47.

dis-, *di-*, inseparable prep., 153. 2.

Disjunctive conjunctions, 465. 3.

dissimilis, comp., 69. 3.
 Distributives, 72.
diū, comp., 152. 2.
dives, 65. 4.
divitiae, 56. 3.
-dō, nouns in gend., 50. 1, exc. 1.
dō, with gerundive, 295. 2.
docēre, constr., 192. 1, note.
domī, locative, 242. 2.
domō, 233. 2.
domōs, 199. 2.
domus, dec., 54. 2.
 gend., 54. 3.
dōnec, in temp. clauses, 354, 470. 6.
dōnō, constr., 203.
dōnom = *dōnum*, 9. 4.
dōs, gend., 50. 1, exc. 3.
 Double consonants, 4.
dt, changed to *s* or *ss*, 11. 4.
 Doubting, verbs of, constr. with, 341. 3.
dubitō, with inf., 341. 3, note.
dūc, 18. 2, exc., 100. 6.
ducentī, 73. 1.
dum, 352-354, 470. 6.
 in proviso, 376.
dummodo, in proviso, 376.
duo, 19. 4, 73.

E

e, 2.
 sound, 5.
 quantity, final, 19. 2; in increments of nouns, 21; verbs, 22.
ē, adverbs in, 148. 1.
 in gen. and dat. 4th dec., 55. 4.
 in stem of 5th dec., 31, 55.
 nouns in, gend., 50. 3.
 prep., 258. 3.
ē, changed, 9. 2.
eā, 151.
eādem, 151.
ecce, 155.
 with nom., 200. note 3.
ēdic, 100. 6.
 Editorial "we," 432. 2.
edō, 139.
ēduc, 100. 6.
 Effecting, verbs of, 341.
egēre, 231.
ego, 19. 4, 77.

ei, 3; sound, 6.
-eis, 159. 4.
-ēla, 161. 1.
 Elegiac, Distich, 526.
 Elision, 514.
 Ellipsis, 485.
-ellus, *-a*, *-um*, 159. 1, 165.
 Emphasis, devices to secure, 472-477.
 Emphatic position, 471.
ēn, 18. 2, exc., 155, 200. note 3.
 Enclitics, 15. 3, 77. 2-4.
 accent of, 15. 3.
 quantity, 18. exc.
 Encouraging, verbs of, constr. with, 333.
 Endings:
 1st dec., 33.
 2d dec., 35.
 3d dec., 39.
 4th dec., 53.
 5th dec., 55.
 derivative, 157-166.
 personal, in verbs, 91.
enim, 465. 7.
-ēns, participial adjs. in, 66. exc. 3.
-ēnsimus, 72. note 2.
-ēnsis, 163. 2, 164. 4.
ēnsis, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
 Enumerations, 468.
eō, verb, 142.
eō, adv., 151.
eōdem, 151.
 Epistolary tenses, 313.
epitomē, 34.
epulae, 56. 3.
epulum, 58. 1, 59.
-er, nouns 2d dec., 35. 2.
 3d dec., gend., 50. 1.
ergā, 258. 1.
ergō, 465. 8.
-ernus (*-urnus*), 166. 1.
-es, quantity of final, 20. exc. 1.
-ēs, nouns in 1st dec., 34.
-ēs, in nom. pl., 52. 6.
-essim = *-uerim*, 101. 3.
-esso = *-uerō*, 101. 3.
et, 465. 1-2 and 6, 469.
et ea, 445. 5.
etenim, 465. 7.
etiam, 465. 6.

etiam si, const., 378. 3.
etsi, const., 378. 4.
-etum, 159. 2.
 Etymology, figures of, 478-481.
eu, 3; sound, 6.
-eus, 164. 3.
-eus, 163. 1.
ex- (*ē*-, *ef*-, *ec*), 12. 4.
ex, prep., 258. 3.
-ex, *gend.* of nouns in, 50. 2, exc. 4.
exercitus, 53.
exsequiae, 56. 3.
exterior, 71. 1.
extrā, 258. 1.
extrēmus, 423.

F

fac, 100. 6.
facile cōgnitū, 302. 2, note.
facilis, 65. 2.
 comp., 69. 3.
 with supine in *-ū*, 302. 1.
faciō, with *pres. part.*, 285. 1.
factū, 302. 2.
fulsus, 71. 2.
famēs, 58. 6.
fārī, 144. 4.
fās, 60, 302. 1.
fascis, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.
fasti, 56. 3.
faucēs, 56. 3.
 Fearing, verbs of, 336.
 Feet, principal, 512.
fēlix, 65. 3.
fer, 100. 6.
-fer, 35. 3, 63. 5.
ferō, 140.
ferro ignique, 49. 4.
-ficus, 69. 4.
fidō, 89. 1.
fidus, *comp.*, 71. 2.
 Fifth declension, 55.
 Figures of Etymology, 478-481.
 Prosody, 514-522.
 Rhetoric, 493-497.
 Syntax, 482-492.
filia, *dat. and abl. pl.*, 33. note 2.
filius, 36. 2 and 3.
 Final clauses, 328 ff.
 Final consonant, omitted, 11. 5.

finis, 57.
fiō, 143.
 First conjugation, 95, 96.
 dec., 33 ff.
flūmen, 45.
 Folk names, 49. 6.
 Following, verbs of, *constr. with*,
 341. 2.
fōns, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 5.
fore ut, 404.
 Formation of words, 156 ff.
fornix, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 4.
fōrs, 61. 2.
fortūna, 57.
 Fourth conjugation, 95, 96.
 dec., 53 ff.
frāter, 49. 6.
frēnum, 59.
 Frequentatives, 157. 1.
frētus, 247. note 1.
 Fricatives, 40.
 stems, 46.
frūgī, 66. exc. 5.
 compared, 69. 5.
frūgis, 61. 4.
fruor, with *abl.*, 253.
fungor, with *abl.*, 253.
 conj., 97.
fūr, 18. 2, exc.
fūstis, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.
 Future on *pres. stem*, 90. 1.
 concessive, 379.
 subj., 317.
 syntax, 310.
 Future Perfect, 90. 2.
 in conclusion, 363. 4.
 subj., 317.
 syntax, 311.
futūrum esse ut, with *subj.*, 404.

G

g, sound, 7.
 changed to c, 11. 2.
gaudeō, 89. 1.
 Gender, 26-28.
 different forms for *masc. and*
 fem., 27. 3.
 names of living beings, 27.
 names of things, 28.

Gender:

1st dec., 33.

2d dec., 35, 37. exc.

3d dec., 50.

4th dec., 53, 54. 3.

5th dec., 55. 1.

Syntax, agreement in, 174. 2-4, 177.

with several subjects, 177. 4.

Genitive, 29. 2.

endings, 31.

in *-āi*, 33. note 1.in *-ās*, 33. note 1.in *-i* for *-ii*, 2d dec., 36. 1 and 2.in *-ium*, in plur., 3 dec., 49. 6.in *-ūm* for *-ārum*, 33. note 3.in *-ūm* for *-ōrum*, 36. 6.

5th dec., 55. 3-5.

pl. lacking, 61. 5.

of Greek nouns, 3d dec., 52. 3, 52. 7.

typical endings, 51.

Syntax of, 215 ff.

appositive, 219.

material, 221.

measure, 223.

objective, 216.

origin, 220.

partitive, 225. 1-5.

possession, 217.

in appos. with poss., 433. 2.

price, 224.

quality, 222.

subjective, 216.

for dative, 226. 3.

for prep. phrase, 411.

with adjs., 226. 1.

with parts., 226. 2.

with *interest* and *rēfert*, 230.

with verbs of emotion, 229.

with verbs of judicial action, 228.

with verbs of remembering, reminding, and forgetting, 227.

with verbs that usually take abl., 231.

genus, 46.*-ger*, 35. 3, 63. 5.

Gerund, 88, 90, 259.

Gerund, Syntax, 287 ff.

case uses:

Nom., 293.

Gen., 289.

Dat., 290.

Acc., 291.

Abl., 292.

declined, 288.

defined, 287.

object of, 294.

Gerundive, 88, 90, 259.

of deponents, 97.

2d periphrastic conj., 98. 2.

-undus for *-endus*, 101. 6.

Syntax, 295 ff.

defined, 287.

uses, 295. 1.

of intr. used impers., 295. 1, note.

with *dō*, etc., 295. 2.

Gerundive construction, 296 ff.

defined, 296.

when used, 296, 297.

in formulas, 300.

with *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, etc., 299.

with neuter adjs., 298.

-gō, *gend.* of nouns in, 50. 1, exc. 1.*gracilis*, compared, 69. 3.*grātia*, 57.*grātia* with *gen.* of Gerund, 289. 3.

Greek nouns:

1st dec., 34.

2d dec., 38.

3d dec., 52 ff.

grex, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 4.*-guis*, *gend.* of nouns in, 50. 2, exc. 2.

Gutturals, 8.

stems, 41 and 43.

with *s* = *x*, 11. 7.

H

habeō with pf. pass. part., 284

Happening, verbs of, 341. 2.

sequence in, 316. 2.

Hardening, 518.

haud sciō, with *an*, 390. 4.*hei*, 155. 1.*Hellēspontus*, 28. 2, note.*hem*, 155. 2.

Hendiadys, 488.

hercle, 155. 3, note.
Heroic hexameter, 523.
Heteroclites, 58.
Heterogeneous nouns, 59.
heu, 155. 1.
heus, 155. 3.
Hexameter, 523.
hic, quan., 18. 2, exc.; dec., 80.
 Syntax of, 441, 442.
Hindering verbs of, 335, 341. 3.
Historical tenses, 304 ff.
 present, 305. 4, 316. 1.
 perfect, 307. 2 and 3.
 sequence, 314, 315.
Hoping verbs of, 272.
Hortatory subj., 321.
hortor, 97.
hortus, 57.
hostis, 47.
huc, 18. 2, exc.
humī, 242. 2.
humilis, comp., 69. 3.
humus, gend., 37. 2.
Hypallage, 497.
Hyperbole, 476.
Hypothetical reason, 358.
Hysteron proteron, 490.

I (vowel)

i, 2; sound, 5; consonant use, 2.
 quan., final, 19. 3.
 quan. in increms. of nouns, 21.
 quan. in increms. of verbs, 22.
i = *ii*, 36. 1.
 in gen. 4th dec., 54. 4.
 in voc., 36. 3.
 in abl., 49. 4.
 in abl. of adjs., 66.
-i-stems, 47. 2.
i, changed, 9. 3.
-i-stems, 39, 47.
-ia, nom. pl., 49. 5; of adjs., 66.
-ia, suffix, 160.
-iādēs, 159. 4.
Iambic verse, 513.
Iambus, 512.
-iānus, 164. 1.
-ias, 159. 4.
-ibam = *-iēbam*, 101. 2.

ibi, 19. 3, 151.
ibidem, 151.
-icius, 163. 2.
Ictus, 511.
-icus, 163. 2, 164. 3 and 5.
id quod, 445. 4.
id temporis, 195. note.
Ideal cond., 364; in indir. disc., 403.
idem, 80; syntax, 446.
Ides, 498. 3.
-idēs, *-idēs*, 159. 4.
-idō, 161. 4, note.
idōneus, 214. 4.
Iūdūs, gend., 54. 3; pl. only, 56. 3.
-idus, 162. 2.
-iēns = *iēs*, 72. note.
-ier = *i* in inf., 101. 5.
igitur, 465. 8.
ignis, 49. 4.
-ile, 159. 2.
-ilis, 162. 3.
 quantity of penult in adjs., 23. 1.
Illative conjunctions, 465. 8.
ille, dec., 80; syntax, 441, 443.
-illō, 157. 4.
-illus, *-a*, *-um*, 159. 1.
-im = *-am*, or *-em* in subj., 101. 1.
-im in acc. sing., 49. 1-3.
imber, 49. 4.
immō, 386. note.
Imparisyllabic stems, 39.
 in *-ēs*, *-ēs*, gen., 50. 1.
impedimentum, 57.
Imperative, 319 ff.; tenses of, 320.
 constr., 322.
 in concl. of cond., 363. 3.
Imperative clauses in indir. disc., 393.
Imperfect Tense, 88. 2.
 drops *e* in 4th conj., 101. 2.
 formed on pres. stem, 90.
Syntax, 306 ff.
 beginning of an action, 306. 5.
Conative, 306. 2.
Epistolary, 313.
Historical, 348. note.
 with *iam diū*, etc., 306. 4.
 of overlapping action, 343. 4.
 for fut. time, 317.
 in Potential Subj., 327.
 in Result clauses, subj., 316. 2.

Imperfect Tense :

- in Wishes, 325.
- in Unreal cond., 367.
- in Temp. Clause, 351. 1.

Impersonal Verbs, 145.

- imper. of, 145. note 1.
- pass. of intr. used as impers., 205. note.
- with acc., 186.
- with gen., 229.
- with Inf., as subj., 262.
- with Inf. and subj. acc., 267.
- with Subj., Res. clauses, 341. 2.

impetus, 61. 5.

implere, 231.

in- (*il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *i-*), 12. 5.

in, prep., 258. 4.

-ina, 159. 3.

Inceptives (Inchoatives), 147. 2, 157.

Increments :

- of nouns, 21.
- of verbs, 22.

inde, 151; *indidem*, 151.

Indeclinable nouns, 60.

gend. of, 60.

Indefinite prons., 84; syntax of, 456 ff.

Indeterminate subj., 172, 321. 3, 363. 2.

Indicative, uses, 318.

- in concl. of Unreal cond., 368-9.
- instead of Delib. Subj., 324. note.

indigeo, constr., 231, 237. 2, note.

Indirect Discourse, 391-404.

- defined, 391.
- moods, in decl. sentences, 392.
- moods, in impr. clauses, 393.
- moods, in interr. clauses, 394.
- moods, in rhetorical quests., 395.
- tenses, in indir. quest., 397.
- tenses in subord. clauses, 398.

Indirect changed to direct, 399, 401.

Indirect conditions, 402-404.

indutiae, 56. 3.

inesse, 212. note 1.

infimus, denoting a part, 423.

Informal Indir. Disc., 400.

Infinitive, 260 ff.

- complementary, 261.
- as object, 264.
- with pred. noun, 265.

Infinitive :

- as subject, 262.
- with pred. noun, 263.
- as substantive, 261.
- exclamatory, 275.
- historical, 276.
- in rel. clause in indir. disc., 392. note 2.
- instead of acc., 273. 5.
- instead of Gerund, 291. note 2.
- poetical uses, 277.
- with *iubeo* and *veto*, 273. 2.
- with *nolo*, *malō*, *volō*, *cupio*, 273.
- with passives, 274.
- with subj. acc., 266 ff.
- with *sinō*, *patior*, 273. 3.
- with verbs of emotion, 273. 4.
- with verbs of hoping, promising, swearing, 272.
- Tenses of, 260. 1-4.

inferus, 71. 4.

Inflection, 24 ff.

infra, 258. 1.

ingens, 71. 3.

inops, 66. exc. 2.

inquam, 144. 2.

Inseparable preps., 153. 2.

insidiae, 56. 3.

instar, 60; with gen., 218. 2.

Intensive prons., 81.

verbs, 157. 1.

inter, 258. 1.

inter nōs, reciprocal use, 439.

interest, 230.

interior, 71. 1.

Interjections, 155, 200. notes 1-3.

Interrogative prons., 83.

particles, 385.

particles, in part. clause, 390. 4, note.

two or more interrogatives in same sentence, 390. 6.

Interrogative clauses in indir. disc., 394.

intrā, 258. 1.

Intransitive verbs, 87. 2.

-inus, 163. 5, 164. 1 and 4.

quantity of penult of adjs., 23. 2.

inutilis, 214. note 4.

inventū, 302. 2.

invitus = pres. part. of *nōlō*, 141.
 note 1.
-iō, 161. 4.
 abstrs. and colls. in *-iō*, gen.,
 50. 1, exc. 1.
-iō, verbs in, 3d conj., 99.
-ior, -ius, compar. suffixes, 68.
ipse, dec., 81.
 syntax, 447.
-ir, nouns in 2d dec., 35. 2.
ire, *v* dropped in perf. of compds.,
 100. 2.
 Irony, 475.
 Irregular, adjs., 64.
 nouns, 48.
 verbs, 138 ff.
is, dec., 80; syntax, 445. 1-6.
-is, dropped in pf. 3d conj., 100. 4.
-is, 159. 4; quantity of final, 20.
 nom. in, gen., 50. 2.
-is, in acc. pl. of 3d dec., 39.
 of adjs., 66.
 for *-ibus*, 52. 8.
iste, dec., 80; syntax, 441, 444.
istūc, 15. 4.
itaque, 15. 3, 465. 8.
-itās, 160.
iter, gen., 50. 1, exc. 4.
-iter, adverbial ending, 148. 2.
-itia, 160.
-itim, adverbial ending, 148. 3.
-itūdō, 160.
-ītus, 163. 4.
-itus, 148. 4.
-ium, in gen. pl., 49. 6.
 of adjs., 66.
-ium, 159. 3, 161. 1 and 4.
-ius, 163. 2, 164. 2 and 5.
-ivus, 163. 2.

I (consonant)

i, 2; sound, 7.
 quantity of prec. vowel, 16. 3.
iam diū, iam dūdum, iam pridem,
 with pres., 305. 6; with impf.,
 306. 4.
iocus, 59.
tubeō, 273. 2.
iūgerum, 58.

Iuppiter, 47.
iūrō, 89. 2.
iūssū, 61. 1.
iūvenis, 49. 4, note, 49. 6, 71. 3.
iūxtā, 258. 1.

K

k, 4.

L

-l, gen. of nouns in, 50. 3.
 gen. of stems in, 50. 3, exc.
 Labials, 8.
 Labial-stems, 41-42.
lāc, 18. 2, exc.
lacer, 63. 5.
laus, 42.
 Leap year, 504.
 Length, table of, 530.
-lentus, 163. 3.
leō, 45.
lepus, gen., 50. 3, exc.
Lēthē, 28. 1, note.
 Letters, dates in, 502.
 tenses in, 313.
liber, 63. 4.
licet, with subj., 378.
ligō, gen., 50. 1, exc. 1.
-limus, superlative suffix, 69. 3.
 Liquids, 8.
 Liquid-stems, 44.
 Litotes, 474.
littera, 57.
 Locative, 29. 2, 242.
 nouns in ap. with, 242. 3.
locō with gerundive, 295. 2.
locus, 59.
 Logical conditions, 363.
 in indir. disc., 402.
 Long syllables, 17. 1 and 17. 4-5.
 vowels, 16. 1 and 16. 3-4.
longinquus, 71. 3.
longum est, 318. 3.
lūxuria, 58. 2.
lynx, 49. 6.

M

m, sound of final, 7.
 becomes *n*, 11. 6.
 inserted in pres. stem, 103. 2.

magis, in comparison, 70. 3.
māgnī, 224.
māgnopere, comp., 152. 2.
māgnus, comp., 69. 6.
māior nātū, 238. 1.
māiorēs, 56. 3.
Making, verbs of, with two accs., 191. 2.
male, quant. of final vowel, 19. 2, exc., 148. 1, note.
 comp., 152. 2.
mālim and *mālem* with opt. subj., 325. note.
mālō, 141; with inf. and acc., 273. 1.
malus, comp., 69. 6.
māne, 60.
mānēs, 56. 3.
manus, gend., 54. 3.
marmor, gend., 50. 1, exc. 2.
māter, 49. 6.
māteria, 58. 2.
Matrona, 28. 1, note.
mātūrus, comp., 69. 2.
māximam partem, 195. note.
māximē, in comparison, 70. 3.
māximi, 224.
māxumus = *māximus*, 9. 5.
meam vicem, 195. note.
Measures, 527-531.
medius fidius, 155. 3, note.
memini, 144. 6; with gen., 227. 1.
 with acc., 227. 2.
 like pres., 307. 1, note.
memor, 66. exc. 2.
memorātū, 302. 2.
-men, *-mentum*, 161. 5.
mēnsa, 33.
mēnsis, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
mercēs, gend., 50. 1, exc. 5.
merges, gend., 50. 1, exc. 5.
meridiēs, gend., 55. 1.
meritō, comp., 152. 4.
messis, 49. 3.
-met, 77. 2.
Metre, see **Versification**.
metuō, 204.
meus, dec., 36. 3; voc. *mī*, 78. 2.
Middle voice, 188.
mīhi, 19. 3.
miles, 42.

militiae, loc., 242. 2.
milia, 73.
mille, 74. 2.
minae, 56. 3.
minimi, 224.
minor nātū, 238. 1.
minōris, 224.
minus for *nōn*, 361. 1, note
miser, 63. 5.
misereor, with gen., 229.
miseret, 229.
modo in proviso, 376.
moenia, 56. 3.
monēns, dec., 65. 5.
moneō, 95.
Money, Roman, 527-529.
Monosyllables, quant., 18.
mōns, gend., 50. 2, exc. 5.
Moods, 88. 1; syntax, 318 ff.
 Indic., 318.
 Subj., 321 ff.
 Imv., 319, 320.
 Inf., 260 ff.
 In dep. clauses, 328 ff.
mōs, 18. 2, exc.; dec., 46.
Motion to, expressed by acc., 199.
multum, comp., 152. 2.
multus, comp., 69. 6.
mūnicipium, 199. 2, note.
Mute-stems, 41.

N

n, sound, 7; gend. of nouns in, 50. 3.
-nam, intensive suffix, 83. 3.
nam, conj., 465. 7.
Names of living beings, 27.
 of things, 28.
namque, 485. note.
nārēs, 56. 3.
Nasals, 8.
Nasal-stems, 45.
nātū, 61. 1.
nāvis, 49. 3.
-ne, 15. 3-4, 18. 1, exc., 385. 2.
nē, with imv., 319.
 with subj., 321, 325, 328, 341.
nē nōn, 336.
nē . . . quidē, 465. 5.
nec . . . nec, 465. 2.

necessarius, constr., 214. note 4.
necesse est, constr., 267. note.
necne, 390. 3.
nec nōn, 465. 6.
nefās, 60; with supine in -ū, 302. 1.
nēmō, 61. 3, 462.
neptis, 49. 3.
nequam, 66. exc. 5.
 comp., 69. 5.
neque, 465. 1.
neque . . . neque, 465. 2.
nequeō, 142. note 3.
nēve (neu), 465. 3, 330.
nēsciō quis, use, 390. 5.
neuter, 64. 3.
nihil, 60.
nihilī, 224.
-nis, gend. of nouns in, 50. 2, exc. 2.
nisi, 19. 3, 361. 2.
nitor, constr., 247. 3, note 1.
nix, 49. 6.
 "No," 386. 2.
nōlī, with inf., 321. 4.
nōlō, 141; with inf. and acc., 273. 1;
 with subj., 273. 1.
nōmen, constr., 212. note 2.
 Nominative, 29. 2.
 like acc. and voc., 32.
 plural in -ia, 49. 5.
 lacking, 61. 4.
 of 3d dec., 51.
 Syntax, 256.
 of pers. pron. omitted, 432. 1.
nōn, 18. 2, exc.; with subj., 327.
nōn modo nōn, nōn solum nōn, 467.
nōn queō = nequeō, 142. note 3.
Nōnae, 56. 3.
 Nones, 498. 2.
nōnne, 385. 3.
nostrātium, 49. 6.
nostrī, 216. 5.
nostrum, 77. 1, 216. 5.
 with *omnium*, 432. 3.
 Nouns, 25 ff.; classes, 25. 1.
 abstract, 25. 2.
 collective, 25. 3.
 concrete, 25. 2.
 cases, 29. 2.
 composition, 169.
 declension, 31.

Nouns:

defective, 61.
 derivation, 159-161.
 from adjectives, 160.
 from nouns, 159.
 from verbs, 161.
 gender, 26-28.
heteroclites, 58.
heterogeneous, 59.
 indeclinable, 60.
 number, 29. 1.
 Syntax:
 Nom., 256.
 Gen., 215-231.
 Dat., 201-214.
 Acc., 183-200.
 Voc., 257.
 Abl., 232-255.
 abstract for concrete, 407.
 concrete for abstract, 406.
 use of plural, 408, 409, 410.

-ns, polysyllables in, 49. 6.
nōvi as pres., 307. 1, note.
novus, 71. 2.
nūbēs, dec., 47.
nūllus, 64. 2.
num, 385. 4, 390. 1.
 Number, 29. 1.
 agreement in, 175. 1.
 of verbs, 88. 3.
 Numerals, 72 ff.
 declension of, 73.
nūper, 152. 4.
-nus, 163. 2.

O

o, sound, 5; quan. of final, 19 and 19. 4; quan. in increms. of nouns, 21; quan. in increms. of verbs, 22.
ō, changed, 9. 4.
ō, nom. in, 52; gen. of nouns in, 50. 1.
ō, interj., with voc., 200. note 1.
ob- (*oc-*, *of-*, *og-*, *op-*), 12. 6.
ob, prep., 258. 1.
 Oblique cases, 29. 2, note.
 Obtaining, verbs of, constr. with, 334.
ocius, comp., 152. 3.

ōdī, 144. 6; as pres., 307. 1. note.
oe, 3; sound, 6.
-olus, -a, -um, 159. 1, 165.
-on, nouns in, 38.
-ōn, in gen. plural, 3d dec., 52. 7.
 Onomatopoeia, 496.
opera, 57.
opis, 61. 4.
oportet, constr., 267 and 267. note.
oportuit, with pres. inf., 260. 1, note.
oppidum, with name of town, 199. 2, note 2.
ops, 49. 6, 57.
 Optative subj., 325.
optimātium, 49. 6.
opus est, with supine in -ū, 302. 1.
-or, gen. of nouns in, 50. 1; meaning of suffix, 161. 2.
orbis, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.
Ōrātiō obliqua, see Indirect Discourse: changed into *Ōrātiō Rēcta*, 401.
 Order of words, 471.
 Ordinals, 72, 73.
 Origin, abl. of, 234; gen., 220.
os, 48, 49. 6.
ōs, gen., 50. 1, exc. 3.
-os, quan. of final, 20; nom. ending, 35. note 1.
-ōs, -os, nouns in, 38.
-ōs, gen. of nouns in, 50. 1.
-ōs (-or), 161. 1.
-ōsus, 163. 3.
 Oxymoron, 494.

P

p-mutes, 8.
paenitet, gerund of, 145. 3, note 2.
palam, with abl., 258. 3.
Panthūs, dec., 38.
pār, 18. 2, exc.
 Parasitic vowels, 10. 2.
parātus, constr., 214. note 4.
 Parisyllables, 39; in -er, -ēs, -is, 49. 6; gen. of nouns in -es, 50. 2; with acc. in -im, 52. 2; with gen. in -ī, 52. 3; with abl. in -ī, 52. 5.
pars, 57.
 Partial obliquity, 400.
 Parts of speech, 24.

particeps, dec., 65. 4.
 Participial stem, formation, 105; euphonic changes in, 106.
 Participles, 259, 278; uses, 282; tenses, 279; with *cernō* and *videō*, 271.
 Future participle:
 with subj. of *esse*, 98. 1, note; irregularities in formation, 100. 5; syntax of, 259, 279. 3, 283.
 Perfect passive participle:
 like act., 89. 2; time, 279. 2; with *habēō* and *teneō*, 284; abstract use, 286; substitutes for perf. act., 281.
 Present participle:
 declined, 65. 5; time, 279. 1; with *faciō*, etc., 285. 1; with *videō* and *audiō*, 285. 2; substitutes for present passive, 280.
partior, 97.
partus, 54. 1.
parum, comp., 152. 2.
parvi, 224.
parvus, comp., 69. 6.
pater, 49. 6.
patior, with inf., 273.
 Passive voice, 87. 1; conjugation, 88; reflexive force, 430; of deponents and defective verbs, 431.
 Patronymics, 159. 4.
pauper, 65. 4.
 Peculiarities of case forms, 3d dec., 49.
 of sequence, 316.
pecten, gen., 50. 3, exc.
pelagus, gen., 37. 1.
pelvis, 49. 2.
penātium, 49. 6.
penes, 258. 1.
 Pentameter, Dactylic, 526.
 Penult, 15.
per- (*pel-*), 12. 7.
per, prep., 258. 1.
 Perfect stem, formation of, 104; tenses formed on, 90. 2.
 Perfect tense, in -āvi and -ēvi, 100. 1; drops *v*, 100. 2; in -ēre for -ērunt, 100. 3; drops *is*, 101. 4.

Perfect tense:

Syntax, 307 ff.

present perfect, 307. 1.

like pres., 307. 1, note; takes
historical sequence, 316. 4;
of a single act, 343. 1; with
force of pluperfect, 343. 2.

historical perfect, 307. 2; with
neg., 307. 3.

of instantaneous action, 308.
1; gnomic perfect, 308. 2.

perf. inf., sequence after, 316. 6.

Periphrastic conjugation, 98; first,
98. 1; second, 98. 2; in unreal con-
ditions, 369.

permāgni, 224.

Permitting, verbs of, constr. with, 333.

Person, 88. 3; syntax of, 176.

Personal endings of verb, 91.

pronouns, 77; syntax of, 432.

pēs, 18. 2, exc., 49. 6.*petere*, constr., 192. 2, note.*ph*, sound, 7.*piscis*, gen., 50. 2, exc. 2.*plēbi*, 55. 5.*plēbs*, dec., 58. 4.

Pleonasm, 487.

Pluperfect tense, 88. 2; syntax of, 309;
of repeated acts, 343. 3.

Plural, 29. 1; nouns in plural only,
56. 2 and 3; with meaning diff. from
sing., 57; for sing., 408; exact use,
409; generic, 410.

plūris, 224.*plūrimi*, 224.

plūs, 18. 2, exc., 65. 7; as a noun, 65.
7, note.

Polysyndeton, 484.

pōns, gen., 50. 2, exc. 5.*pontus*, 28. 2, note.*por-*, inseparable prep., 153. 2.*porticus*, gen., 54. 3.*portus*, 54. 1.

Positive degree, 67. 1; lacking, 71. 1.

Possessive pronouns, 78; = subj. gen.,
216. 3; = obj. gen., 216. 4; when
used, 433. 1; = gen. of per. pron.,
433. 3; with gen. as appositive,
433. 2.

possum, 138.

post, with acc., 258. 1; in expressions
of time, 249.

posterī, 56. 3.*posterior*, 71. 1.*postis*, 50. 2, exc. 2.

postquam, 470. 6; in temporal clauses,
343.

postridiē, with gen. and acc., 258. 2.*postulāre*, constr., 192. 2, note.

Potential subj., 327.

potior, constr., 231, 253.*potius*, 152. 3.*prae*, 254. note 2, 258. 3.*praecordia*, 56. 3.*Praenōmina*, 507; abbreviations, 508.*praesēpis*, 49. 3.*praeter*, 258. 1.*prandēō*, 89. 2.*precāri*, constr., 192. 2, note.*precī*, dec., 61. 7.

Predicate, 173 ff.; agreement, 174;
agreement with two or more sub-
jects, 175 ff.; adj., 174. 2; apposi-
tive, 181; attributive, 181; noun,
174. 3; position, 471.

Prepositions, derivation, 153. 1; in-
separable, 153. 2; with acc., 258. 1;
with abl., 258. 3; with acc. and abl.,
258. 4; with case = part. gen., 225.
5, note 2; with case = obj. gen.,
216. 2; in composition, 153. 2;
changes in, 12.

Prepositional phrases, substitutes for,
410.

Present stem, formation of, 102, 103.
tenses formed on, 90. 1.

Present tense, 88. 2; inf. in *-er*, 101. 5;
subj. in *-im*, 101. 1.

Syntax: conative, 305. 3; con-
tinuous, 305. 2; gnomic, 305. 5;
historical, 305. 4; like fut., 305.
7; sequence of historical, 316.
1; single act, 343. 1; with *iam*
diū, 305. 6.

Preventing, verbs of, constr. with, 335.

pridiē, with gen. and acc., 258. 2.

Principal parts, 92. 3.

tenses, 304.

sequence, 314, 315.

princeps, 42.

prior, 71. 1.
prius, 152. 3.
priusquam, 470. 6; with ind., 350;
 with subj., 351.
prō, 258. 3.
procul, 258. 3.
 Prohibition, 321. 4.
 Prolepsis, 491.
 Pronominal adjectives, 86.
 Pronouns, 75 ff.; classes, 76.
 correlative, 85.
 demonstrative, 80; syntax, 182,
 441-446.
 indefinite, 84; syntax, 456-463.
 intensive, 81; syntax, 447.
 interrogative, 83.
 personal, 77; syntax, 432.
 reciprocal, 439, 440.
 reflexive, 79; syntax, 434-438.
 relative, 82; syntax, 182, 448-455.
 Pronunciation, 5-7.
prope, 152. 2, 258. 1.
propior, 258. 2, 71. 1.
propius, 258. 2.
 Proper names, in *-eus*, 36. 5; in *-ius*,
 36. 1; fems. in *-ō*, 52. 3; parisylla-
 bles in *-ēs*, 52. 3; in sing. only, 56.
 1; voc. of Greek nouns, 52. 4; with
 voc. in *-ī*, 36. 3.
propinquus, 71. 3.
propter, with acc., 254. note 1, 258. 1.
 Prosody, see Versification.
Prōsper, 63. 5.
prōspicere, with acc. and dat., 204.
 Protasis, 360.
prōvidēre, with acc. and dat., 204.
prōvidus, comp., 69. 4, note.
Proviso, 376.
proximē, 258. 2.
proximus, 258. 2.
-pse, 18. 1, exc.
-pte, 18. 1, exc.
pudet, gerundive of, 145. 3, note 2.
pulvis, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
puppis, 49. 2.
 Purpose clauses, 328 ff.
 of mention of action, 332.
 substantive, 333-336.
 ut nē, 329; *quō*, 331; *nēve* (*neu*),
 330.

Purpose, expressed by final clause,
 328.
 expressed by rel. clause, 382. 3.
 expressed by fut. act. part., 283.
 expressed by supine in *-um*, 301.
 expressed by *ad* with acc. of
 gerundive, 297.
 expressed by *ad* with acc. of
 gerund, 291.
 expressed by *causā* with gen. of
 gerund, 289. 3.
 expressed by dat., 206.

Q

quā, 151.
quadrigae, 56. 3.
quaeso, 144. 3.
quālis, 85.
quālescumque, 85.
quam, 151.
quamquam, 470. 5; with ind., 378. 5;
 with corrective force, 378. 5, note.
quamvis, 470. 5; with adj. or adv.,
 378. 2, note; with subj., 378. 2.
quandō, 470. 6; in temp. clause, 356.
quandocumque, 343.
quanti, 224.
 Quantity, 16 ff.
 of final syllables, 19, 20.
 of increms. of nouns, 21; of verbs,
 22.
 of monosyllables, 18.
 penults, in *-ilis*, 23. 1; in *-inus*,
 23. 2.
 of stem-vowels of verbs, 23. 3.
quantus, 85.
quantuscumque, 85.
quasi, 19. 3.
-que, 15. 3, 18. 1, exc.
quemadmodum, 151.
queō, 142. note 3.
 Questions, 384-390.
 direct, 384-387.
 indirect, 388-390.
 rhetorical, 384. 3; in indir. disc.,
 395.
 sentence, 384. 1.
 word, 384. 2.
qui, dec., 82; abl., 82. 1, 83. 1.

quia, 470. 1; in causal clause, 357.
quicumque, 82. 2.
quid, 387. 1; *quid enim*, 387. 2.
quidam, 84. 6, 457.
quies, gend., 50. 1, exc. 5.
quin, 18. 2, exc.
quin clauses, 337, 341. 3.
quis, indef. after *si*, 84. 1.
quis, int. pro., 83; adj., use, 83. 2.
quis = quibus, 82. 1.
quisnam, 83. 3.
quispiam, 84. 3.
quisquam, 84. 4; syntax, 458.
quisque, 84. 7, 435. note, 460.
quisquis, 82. 3.
quivis, 84. 5.
quō, 151, 331.
quoad, in temp. clause, 354.
quod, 465. 5, 470. 1; in causal clause, 357; in substantive clause, 359.
quod sciam, 383. 5.
quom = cum, 9. 4.
quōmodo, 151.
quō minus, 335.
quoniam, in causal clause, 357; conj., 470. 1.
quoque, 465. 6.
quot, 85; *quotquot*, 85.
quotannis, 150. 2.
quotiēns, 151.
quotus, 85.

R

r, sound, 7.
rāstrum, 59.
-re = -ris, 100. 4.
re-, insep. prep., 153. 2.
Reciprocal pronouns, 439, 440.
recordāri, constr., 227. 3.
rēfert, constr. with, 230.
Reflexive pronouns, 79.
Syntax, 434-438.
 in simple sentences, 434.
 in complex sentences, 437.
 with acc. and inf., 436.
 referring to indef. subj., 438.
Refusing, verbs of, constr. with, 341. 3.
Relative clauses, 380-383.
 with ind., 380, 381.

Relative clauses:

with subj., 382, 383; cause, 383. 2;
characteristic, 382. 5 and 383;
concession, 382. 1; purpose,
382. 3; result, 382. 4.

Relative pronoun, 82.

agreement, 182.
attracted into case of anteced., 454.
= demonstrative with connective, 455.
expressed when obj., 448.
= *ut* with demonstrative, 382. 4, note.

reliquiae, 56. 3.

Repeated action, tenses of, 312.

Repudiated statement, 357.

requies, dec., 58. 3.*rēs*, dec., 55.*restis*, 49. 2.

Result clauses, 337-341.

after comp. with *quam*, 339.
after correl. dem., 338.
after impersonals, 340.
substantive, 341; use, 337.

rēx, dec., 43.

Rhetorical-questions, 384. 3; in indir. disc., 395.

rhododendron, dec., 38.

Rhotacism, 11. 8.

Roman, calendar, 498-506.

measures, 527-531.
pronunciation, 5-7.

Root, 156.

rūdēns, gend., 50. 2, exc. 5.

S

s, sound, 7; gend. of nouns in *s* preceded by cons., 50. 2; stems in, 46.

sacer, 71. 2.*saepe*, 19. 2; comp., 152. 2.*sāl*, 18. 2, exc., 50. 3, exc., 57.*salvē*, 144. 5.*salūtāris*, 71. 3.*satis*, comp., 152. 5.

Saying and Thinking, verbs of, 268.

scālae, 56. 3.

Scanning, 524.

sē-, insep. prep., 153. 2.
secundum, 258. 1.
secūris, 49. 2.
secus, 60.
secus, adv., comp., 152. 5.
sed, 465. 5.
seges, gend., 50. 1, exc. 5.
sēmentis, 49. 3.
 Semi-Deponents, 89. 1.
 Semi-vowels, 8.
senex, 48, 49. 6, 71. 3.
 Sentence-questions, 384. 1.
sentis, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
 Sequence of tenses, 315.
 peculiarities of, 316.
servus, 35.
sēstertium, 528. notes.
sēstertius, 527.
seu . . . *seu*, 465. 4.
sī, 361, 390. 2, 470. 4; *sī nōn*, 361. 1.
sibi, 19. 3.
sic, 18. 2, exc., 151.
similis, comp., 69. 3.
simul, 258. 3.
simul atque, 470. 6; in temp. clause,
 343.
sīn, 18. 2, exc., 361. 3.
sine, 258. 3.
sīnō, with inf., 273. 3.
 Singular number, 29. 1; in singular
 only, 56. 1.
sis = *sī vis*, 141. note 2.
sis, 49. 1.
sive . . . *sive*, 465. 4.
socer, 35. note 3.
sōl, 18. 2, exc.; gend., 50. 3, exc.
soleō, 89. 1.
sōlus, 64. 1 and 2.
sōspes, 65. 4.
 Spirants, 8; stems, 46.
 Spondaic verse, 523.
 Spondee, 512.
spontis, *sponte*, 61. 2.
 Stem of nouns, 30; in *ā*, 33; in *ō*,
 35.
 Stem of verbs:
 present, 102 ff.
 perfect, 104.
 participial, 105.
 Striving-verbs of, constr. with, 334.

Styx, 28. 1, note.
sub- (*suc-*, *suf-*, *sug-*, *sum-*, *sup-*, *sur-*),
 12. 8.
sub, with acc. and abl., 258. 4.
 Subject, 171 ff.
 defined, 171; case, 171.
 indeterminate, 172; omitted, 171.
 note.
 position, 471; several subjects,
 175.
 Subjunctive mood:
 asseverations, 326.
 attraction, 405.
 concessive, 323.
 conditions, 360 ff.
 deliberative, 324.
 future, 317.
 hortatory, 321.
 indir. disc., 391 ff.
 optative, 325; with *velim*, 325.
 note.
 potential, 327.
 periphrastic, 317. 3.
 pres. or impf. with *mox*, 317. 3,
 note.
 In dependent clauses:
 causal, 355 ff.
 concessive, 377 ff.
 purpose, 328 ff.
 relative, 382. 3.
 result, 337 ff.
 temporal, 342 ff.
 Subordinate conjunctions, 154, 470.
 Substantive clauses of purpose, 333.
 as subject, 333. 1; as object, 333.
 2; as apposition, 333. 3.
 with verbs of fearing, 336.
 with verbs of hindering, 335.
 with verbs of wishing, 334.
 Substantive clauses of result, 341.
 use, 341; negative, 341.
 with verbs of causation, 341. 1.
 with verbs of compelling, 341. 2.
 with verbs of hindering, 341. 3.
 with *quod*, 359.
suī, dec., 79; syntax, 434-438.
sum, 93; compounds of, 93; inde-
 pendent use, 173. 2; omitted, 173.
 4; with adv., 173. 2.
super, 258. 1.

Superlative, with *māximē*, 70.
 in *-entissimus*, 69. 4; in *-limus*,
 69. 3; in *-rimus*, 69. 1.
superstes, 65. 4.
superus, 71. 4.
 Supine, 259; formation, 90. 3; for-
 mer, in *-um*, 301; latter, in *-ū*, 302.
-sūra, 161. 4, note.
sūs, 47; gend., 50. 2, exc. 3.
suus, 434-438.
 Syllables, common, 17. 3; long by
 nature, 17. 4; long by position,
 17. 5.
 quan. of final, 19 ff.
 Synapheaia, 520.
 Syncope, 10. 3, 479.
 Synizesis (Synaeresis), 519.
 Syntax, 171 ff.
 Systole, 517.

T

t, sound, 7; changed to *s*, 11. 3.
tt, changed to *s* or *ss*, 11. 4.
t-mutes, 8; dropped before *s*, 11. 4,
 41. 2.
tabula, 57.
tālis, 85.
tam, 151.
tamen, 465. 5.
tanti, 224.
tantidem, 224.
tantus, 85.
Tartarus, 59.
-te, 18, exc., 77. 3.
teges, gend., 50. 1, exc. 5.
 Temporal clauses, 342 ff.
 general law for moods, 342.
 antequam clauses, 349-351.
 cum clauses, 344-348.
 dum clauses, 352-354.
 postquam clauses, 343.
tenebrae, 56. 3.
teneō, with part., 284.
tener, 63. 5.
 Tenses, 88. 2.
 formed on pres. stem, 90. 1.
 perf. stem, 90. 2.
 participial stem, 90. 3.
 Syntax of, 303 ff.
 principal and historical, 304.

Tenses:

present, 305; imperfect, 306; per-
 fect, 307, 308; pluperfect, 309;
 future, 310; future perfect, 311;
 of repeated action, 312; episto-
 lary, 313; of subj., 314-317.
 sequence, 315, 316.
 forms used for fut., 317.
 in indir. disc., 396 ff.
 in indir. ques., 397.
 in subordinate clauses, 398.
 of inf., 260.
 of imv., 320.
tenus, 258. 3.
-ter (*-tris*), 163. 6.
 Thesis, 511.
 Third declension, 39 ff.
Thūrium, 59.
-tim, adverbs in, 148. 3.
timeō, 204.
-tinus (*-tinus*), 166. 1.
 Tmesis, 492.
torris, gend., 50. 2, exc. 2.
tōtus, 64. 1 and 2.
totus, 85.
tot, 85.
trabs, dec., 42.
trāns, 258. 1; *trān-*, *trā-*, 12. 9.
 Transitive verbs, 87. 2.
trēs, dec., 73.
tribus, 54. 1; gend., 54. 3.
 Trochee, 512.
-trum, 161. 3.
tū, dec., 77.
tūber, gend., 50. 1, exc. 4.
tum, 151.
tunc, 151.
-tura, 161. 4, note.
turris, 49. 2.
turtur, gend., 50. 3, exc.
tussis, 49. 1.
Tydidēs, dec., 34.
 Typical nominatives and genitives,
 3d dec., 51.

U

u, 2; sound, 5; changed, 9. 5; quan.
 of final, 19; quan. in increms. of
 nouns, 21; quan. in increms. of
 verbs, 22; parasitic, 10. 2; stems, 47.

über, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 4.
ubi, 19. 3, 151, 470. 6.
-ubus in *dat.* and *abl.*, 4th *dec.*, 54. 1.
ui, 3; *sound*, 6.
ūllus, 64. 1 and 2, 84. 4, 459.
ūltior, 71. 1.
-ulum, 161. 5.
-ulus, *-a*, *-um*, 159. 1.
-ulus, 162. 4, 165.
ūltor, as *adj.*, 66. exc. 6.
ūltrā, 258. 1.
-um for *-ārum*, 33. note 3.
 for *-ōrum*, 36. 6.
-um, *nouns* in, 38.
umquam, 151.
unde, 151.
 Unreal conditions, 366-369; in *indir.*
 disc., 404.
ūnus, *dec.*, 73; in *plural*, 74. 1.
-ur, *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 3.
 Urging, *verbs* of, *constr.* with, 333.
us, *quan.* of *final*, 20.
-us, *-us*, *nouns* in, 38.
-us, 161. 1; *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 2.
-us (*gen.*, *-eris*, *-oris*, *-uris*), *gend.* of
 nouns in, 50. 3; (*gen.*, *-ūtis*, *-ūdis*),
 gend. of *nouns* in, 50. 3; *gend.* of
 monosyllables, 50. 2, exc. 3.
usque, 258. 1, note.
ut, 470. 2-3 and 6; in *questions*, 387.
 3; in *purpose clauses*, 328; with
 verbs of *fearing*, 336.
ut nē, 329.
-ut, *gend.* of *nouns* in, 50. 3.
uter, 64. 3.
uterque, 461, 225. 5, note 4.
ūtilis, *constr.*, 214. note 4.
ūtor, with *abl.*, 253.
utrum, 385. 5.
-ūtus, 163. 4.

V

v, *sound*, 7.
valvae, 56. 3.
vannus, *gend.*, 37. 2.
vās, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 1, 58. 1.
vas, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 1.
vē-, *insep. prep.*, 153. 2.
-ve, 15. 3 and 4; 18. exc.
vectis, *gend.*, 50. 2, exc. 2.

vel, *-ve*, 465. 3.
vel ... vel, 465. 4.
vēnum, 61. 6.
vēr, 18. 2, exc.; *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 4.
verber, *gend.*, 50. 1, exc. 4.
Verbs, *quan.* of *increments*, 22;
 voices, 87; *transitive* and *intransi-*
 tive, 87. 2; *conjugation*, 88; *moods*,
 88. 1; *tense*, 88. 2; *person* and
 number, 88. 3; *deponents*, 89; *semi-*
 deponents, 89. 1; *verb-stems*, 90;
 formation of stems, 102-106; *per-*
 sonal endings, 91; *the four con-*
 jugations distinguished, 92. 1;
 principal parts, 92. 3; *regular con-*
 jugations, 95-96; *periphrastic con-*
 jugations, 98; *peculiar forms*, 100;
 ancient and poetical forms, 101;
 list of verbs, 107-137; *irregular*,
 138-143; *defective*, 144; *impersonal*,
 145; *abundant*, 146; *inceptive*, 147;
 frequentatives, 157. 1; *desidera-*
 tives, 157. 3; *diminutives*, 157. 4;
 derivation, 157, 158; *composition*,
 168.
 Syntax:
 agreement, 173; *cases* with, see
 acc., *gen.*, *dat.*, *abl.*, *nom.*;
 noun and *adj. forms*, 259;
 for moods and tenses, see
 the names of the different
 moods and tenses.
vereor, 97.
Versification, 509-526.
versus, with *acc.*, 258. 1.
verū, 54. 1.
vērūm, 465. 5.
vescor, with *abl.*, 253.
vesper, *dec.*, 58. 5.
vestrātium, 49. 6.
vestrī, *objective gen.*, 216. 5.
vestrum, *partitive*, 77. 1; with *om-*
 nium, 432. 3.
vetus, 65. 4; *comp.*, 69. 2, 71. 2.
vicis, 61. 8.
victor, *dec.*, 44; as *adj.*, 66. exc. 6.
vidēn, 15. 4.
videō, with *part.*, 271, 285. 2.
violenter, 148. 2.
vir, *dec.*, 35.

virgō, dec., 45.
virus, gend., 37. 1.
vis, 47, 49. 1, 57.
viscera, 56. 3.
visū, 302. 2.
vivont for *vivunt*, 9. 4.
 Vocative, defined, 29. 2; syntax, 257;
 like nom., 32; in -i, 2d dec., 36. 3;
 -*ie* in adjs., 63. 6.
 Voice, 87.
volō, 141; with inf. and acc., 273. 1;
 with subj., 273. 1.
 Vowels, 2; pronunciation, 5; change,
 9 ff.; contraction, 10. 1; parasitic,
 10. 2; quantity, 16. 1; rules for
 quantity, 16. 2-4; stems, 3d dec.,
 47; syncope of, 10. 3.
vulgus, gend., 37. 1.
vultur, gend., 50. 3, exc.

W

"We," editorial, 432. 2.
 Wishes, 325.
 Wishing, verbs of, constr. with, 334.
 Word-questions, 384. 2.

X

x, a double cons., 4; sound, 7.

Y

y, 2; sound, 5; only in foreign words,
 4. note.
ys, quan. of final, 20.
 "Yes," 386. 1.

Z

z, double cons., 4; use, 4. note.
 Zeugma, 486.